This document does not contain hyperlinks and may be formatted for printing instead of web use. This is due to changes in content and specifications of the vehicle that happen throughout the model year. This manual will be replaced with a hyperlinked version at the end of the model year.

© 2007 Honda Motor Co., Ltd.

P/N 31S9V6411
This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of the Pilot. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

Pour clients canadiens
AVIS IMPORTANT: Si vous avez besoin d'un Manuel du Conducteur en français, veuillez demander à votre concessionnaire de commander le numéro de pièce 33S9VC40
Congratulations! Your selection of a 2007 Honda Pilot was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner’s manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the schedules given in this manual helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer’s staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.
Introduction

California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders
This vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders. These devices record front seat belt use, front passenger seat occupancy, airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component. This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders
This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential and is never linked to the vehicle owner.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act
The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.
Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol ▶️ and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION.
  
  These signal words mean:

  ![DANGER](image)
  
  You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

  ![WARNING](image)
  
  You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

  ![CAUTION](image)
  
  You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.
Important Handling Information

Your Pilot has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-highway driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a high center of gravity. This means your vehicle can tip or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read “Driving Guidelines” on page 198 of this manual and the Off-Highway Driving Guidelines section on page 222. Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in loss of control or an accident.
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Your Vehicle at a Glance (main controls)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver and Passenger Safety (seat belts, SRS, and child protection)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruments and Controls (indicators, gauges, dashboard, and steering column)</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features (climate control, audio, steering wheel, rear entertainment, security, cruise control, and HomeLink)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before Driving (fuel, vehicle break-in, and cargo loading)</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving (engine and transmission operation)</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance (minder, fluid checking, minor services, and vehicle storage)</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taking Care of the Unexpected (flat tire, dead battery, overheating, and fuses)</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Information (vehicle specifications, tires, fuels, and emissions controls)</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty and Customer Relations (U.S. and Canada only) (warranty and contact information)</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorized Manuals (U.S. only) (how to order)</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Information Summary (fluid capacities and tire pressures)</td>
<td>last page</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Overview of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Technical Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A convenient reference to the sections in this manual.</td>
<td>ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Your Vehicle at a Glance</strong></td>
<td>Warranty and Customer Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A quick reference to the main controls in your vehicle.</td>
<td>(U.S. and Canada only) A summary of the warranties covering your new vehicle, and how to contact us for any reason. Refer to your warranty manual for detailed information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Driver and Passenger Safety</strong></td>
<td>Authorized Manuals (U.S. only) How to order manuals and other technical literature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle’s seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Instruments and Controls</strong></td>
<td>Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator and gauge, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Features</strong></td>
<td><strong>Service Information Summary</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to operate the heating and air conditioning system, the audio system, and other convenience features.</td>
<td>A summary of the information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Before Driving</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Driving</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park; plus what you need to know if you’re planning to tow a trailer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maintenance</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The maintenance minder shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer for maintenance service. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Taking Care of the Unexpected</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service Information Summary</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A summary of the information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Your Vehicle at a Glance

Vehicle with rear entertainment system is shown.

* : If equipped.
To use the horn, press the pad around the “H” logo.

*1: If equipped.
This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions .......... 8
Your Vehicle’s Safety Features ........ 9
  Seat Belts .................................. 10
  Airbags ..................................... 11
Protecting Adults and Teens ........... 12
  1. Close and Lock the Doors ......... 13
  2. Adjust the Front Seats .......... 13
  3. Adjust the Seat-Backs .......... 14
  4. Adjust the Head Restraints ... 15
  5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts .................................. 15
  6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position .................................. 18
Advice for Pregnant Women .......... 19
Additional Safety Precautions ......... 20
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts .................................. 21
Seat Belt System Components ... 21
  Lap/Shoulder Belt ......................... 22
  Automatic Seat Belt 
  Tensioners .................................. 23
  Seat Belt Maintenance ................. 23
Additional Information About Your Airbags ..................................... 25
  Airbag System Components ............. 25
  How Your Front Airbags Work ........ 28
  Advanced Airbags ......................... 30
  How Your Side Airbags Work ....... 31
  How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work .................................. 33
  How the SRS Indicator Works ....... 33
Selecting a Child Seat ................... 45
Installing a Child Seat .................. 46
With LATCH ................................. 47
With a Lap/Shoulder Belt .......... 49
With a Tether ............................... 51
Protecting Larger Children .......... 53
Checking Seat Belt Fit .................. 53
Using a Booster Seat .................... 54
When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front .................................. 55
Additional Safety Precautions ......... 56
Carbon Monoxide Hazard ............. 57
Safety Labels .............................. 58
Important Safety Precautions

You’ll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

Always Wear Your Seat Belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 15).

Restrain All Children
Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 38 – 56).

Be Aware of Airbag Hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don’t Drink and Drive
Alcohol and driving don’t mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don’t drink and drive, and don’t let your friends drink and drive, either.

Control Your Speed
Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition
Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 229).
Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in a proper position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passenger.
Your Vehicle’s Safety Features

Seat Belts
Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

**Why Wear Seat Belts**
Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces require you to wear seat belts.

---

**WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle’s built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including frontal, side, and rear impacts and rollovers.
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.
Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 28 for more information on how your front airbags work).

Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 31 for more information on how your side airbags work).

In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact or rollover (see page 33 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).
Your Vehicle’s Safety Features, Protecting Adults and Teens

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- **Airbags do not replace seat belts.** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.

- **Airbags offer no protection in rear impacts, or minor frontal or side collisions.**

- **Airbags can pose serious hazards.** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Protecting Adults and Teens

Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers, and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front seat.

See pages 38 – 56 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.
Protecting Adults and Teens

1. Close and Lock the Doors
   After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

   Your vehicle has a door and tailgate monitor indicator on the instrument panel to indicate when a specific door or the tailgate is not tightly closed.

   Locking the doors reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the vehicle during a crash, and it helps prevent passengers from accidentally opening a door and falling out.

   Locking the doors also helps prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

   See page 82 for how to lock the doors, and page 66 for how the door and tailgate open monitor works.

2. Adjust the Front Seats
   The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest. In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down (see page 78).

   If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

   Adjust the driver’s seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

   If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.
Protecting Adults and Teens

**WARNING**
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

Once your seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

See page 87 for how to adjust the seats.

---

3. Adjust the Seat-Backs

Adjust the driver’s seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

---

**WARNING**
Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant’s chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 87 for how to adjust the seat-backs.
4. Adjust the Head Restraints

Adjust the driver’s head restraint so the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Have passengers with adjustable head restraints adjust their restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

The center seating position in the second row and all third row seats have a detachable seat belt that can be unlatched and retracted into the ceiling to allow the seats to be folded down. See page 17 for how to unlatch and relatch a belt.

Detachable seat belts should normally be latched whenever the seat-backs are in an upright position. See page 18 for how to unlatch a belt, and page 17 for how to relatch a belt.
Protecting Adults and Teens

Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

**WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.

The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, press and hold the release buttons, and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).
Pull out the anchor latch and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling, and pull out the seat belt to extend it.

For the third row outer positions, slide out the outer shoulder belt from the clip and pull the belt out to extend it.

Insert the hook at the end of the anchor latch into the anchor buckle by lining up the triangle marks on the anchor latch and buckle. Make sure the belt is not twisted. Push the anchor latch until it locks. Then follow the procedure for fastening and positioning an ordinary seat belt (see page 15).

**WARNING**

Using a seat belt with the detachable seat belt anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable seat belt anchor is correctly latched.
Protecting Adults and Teens

Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work properly, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt. Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 21 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position
After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

To unlatch the detachable seat belt anchor before folding down the seatback, insert your ignition key into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle and allow the seat belt to retract. For the center seating positions, place the latch plate and anchor latch into their holding slots in the ceiling. For the third row outer seating positions, re-fasten the belt with the clip.
If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips. Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it’s okay for you to drive.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

**WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

*Advice for Pregnant Women*

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it’s okay for you to drive.
Protecting Adults and Teens

Additional Safety Precautions

• Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

• Passengers should not stand up or change seats while the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.

• Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

• Do not put any accessories on seat belts. Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

• Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

• Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers. If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbag inflates.

• Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked “SRS AIRBAG” could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

• Do not attach solid objects on or near a door. If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other solid object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt System Components
Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.

This system uses the same sensors as the front airbags to monitor whether the front seat belts are latched or unlatched, and how much weight is on the front passenger’s seat (see pages 30 and 31).

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

This system monitors the front seat belts. If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger’s seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when the driver’s seat belt is latched and there is no front seat passenger and no items on the front seat, something may be interfering with the monitoring system. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger’s seat.
- Any objects hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any objects, such as a folded-down back seat, that is touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

**Lap/Shoulder Belt**
The lap/shoulder belt in the center seat of the second and third row seats is equipped with a detachable anchor that has two parts: a small latch plate and a buckle.

The detachable anchor should normally be latched whenever the seats-backs are in an upright position. For more information about the detachable anchor (see page 17).

The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 15 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

The seat belts in all positions except the driver's have an additional lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat (see page 49).

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause a front, side, or side curtain airbag to inflate.

If a side airbag or side curtain airbag deploys during a side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle will also deploy.

The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags do not deploy. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the additional restraint could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.

Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 254). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

Honda provides a limited warranty on seat belts. See your Honda Warranty Information booklet for details.

CONTINUED
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by your dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

---

**WARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly, and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.
Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag System Components

(1) Driver’s Front Airbag  
(2) Passenger’s Front Airbag  
(3) Control Unit  
(4) Seat Belt Tensioners  
(5) Side Airbags  
(6) Driver’s Seat Position Sensor  
(7) Front Passenger’s Position Sensors  
(8) Front Impact Sensors  
(9) Side Impact Sensors (First)  
(10) Passenger Airbag Off Indicator  
(11) Occupant Position Detection System (OPDS) Sensors  
(12) Front Passenger’s Weight Sensors/OPDS Sensors Control Unit  
(13) Rollover Sensor  
(14) Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator
Your Airbag System includes:

- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver’s airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger’s airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked “SRS AIRBAG” (see page 28).

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seatbacks. Both are marked “SIDE AIRBAG” (see page 31).

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked “SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG” (see page 33).
Additional Information About Your Airbags

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 23).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact, side impact, or if your vehicle is about to rollover.
- Sensors that can detect whether a small person or child is in the passenger’s side airbag path and signal the control unit to turn the airbag off (see page 34).
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver’s seat belt and a front passenger’s seat belt is latched or unlatched (see page 21).
- A driver’s seat position sensor that monitors the distance of the seat from the front airbag. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force (see page 30).
- Weight sensors that monitor the weight on the front passenger’s seat. If the weight is about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child), the passenger’s front airbag will be turned off (see page 30).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.
- A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags and front seat belt tensioners (see page 33).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners (see page 33).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger’s side airbag has been turned off (see page 34).
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger’s front airbag has been turned off (see page 35).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle’s electrical system is disconnected in a crash.
During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

How Your Front Airbags Work

If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle’s rapid deceleration.

If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will instantly inflate the driver’s and front passenger’s airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest. Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

Only the driver’s airbag can deploy if there is no passenger in the front seat, or if the advanced airbag system has turned the passenger’s airbag off (see page 35).

After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won’t interfere with the driver’s visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.
The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag’s surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**Dual-Stage Airbags**
Your front airbags are dual-stage airbags. This means they have two inflation stages that can be ignited sequentially or simultaneously, depending on crash severity.

In a **more severe** crash, both stages will ignite simultaneously to provide the quickest and greatest protection.

In a **less severe** crash, one stage will ignite first, then the second stage will ignite a split second later. This provides longer airbag inflation time with a little less force.

**Dual-Threshold Airbags**
Your front airbags are also dual-threshold airbags. Airbags with this feature have two deployment thresholds that depend on whether sensors detect the occupant is wearing a seat belt or not.

If the occupant’s belt is **not latched**, the airbag will deploy at a slightly lower threshold, because the occupant would need extra protection.

If the occupant’s belt is **latched**, the airbag will inflate at a slightly higher threshold, when the airbag would be needed to supplement the protection provided by the seat belt.
Additional Information About Your Airbags

**Advanced Airbags**
Your front airbags are also advanced airbags. The main purpose of this feature is to help prevent airbag-caused injuries to short drivers and children who ride in front.

For both advanced airbags to work properly:

- Occupants must sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not spill any liquids on or under the seats, cover the sensors, or put any cargo or metal objects under the front seats.
- Second-row passengers should not put their feet under the front seats.

Failure to follow these instructions could damage the sensors or prevent them from working properly.

| DRIVER’S SEAT POSITION SENSOR | PASSENGER’S SEAT WEIGHT SENSOR |

The driver’s advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor under the seat. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.

If there is a problem with the sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and the airbag will inflate in the normal manner regardless of the driver’s seating position.

The passenger’s advanced front airbag system has weight sensors under the seat. Although Honda does not encourage carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of an infant or small child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn the passenger’s front airbag off.

Be aware that objects placed on the passenger’s seat can also cause the airbag to be turned off.
When the airbag is turned off, a "passenger airbag off" indicator in the center of the dashboard comes on (see page 35).

If the weight sensors detect that there is no passenger in the front seat, the airbag will be off. However, the Passenger Airbag Off indicator will not come on.

To ensure that the passenger’s advanced airbag system will work properly, do not do anything that would increase or decrease the weight on the front passenger’s seat, such as hanging heavy objects on the seat.

- A second-row passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger’s seat.
- Moving the front seat forcibly back against cargo on the seat or floor behind it.
- Hanging heavy items on the front passenger seat, or placing heavy items in the seat-back pocket.
- Moving the front seat or seat-back forcibly back against the folded rear seat.

If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger’s side airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner.

CONTINUED
Additional Information About Your Airbags

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Side Airbag Cutoff System

Your vehicle has a side airbag cutoff system designed primarily to protect a child riding in the front passenger’s seat.

Although Honda does not encourage children to ride in front, this system is designed to shut off the side airbag if a child leans into the side airbag’s deployment path.

The side airbag may also shut off if a short adult leans sideways, or a larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the airbag’s deployment path.

Objects placed on the front passenger seat can also cause the side airbag to be shut off.

If the side airbag off indicator comes on (see page 35), have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the airbag’s deployment path, the system will turn the airbag back on, and the indicator will go out.

There will be some delay between the moment the passenger moves into or out of the airbag deployment path and when the indicator comes on or goes off.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or other object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.
Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work

If the impact is on the passenger’s side, the passenger’s side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

**In a Rollover**
If the rollover sensor detects your vehicle is about to roll over, it will signal the control unit which will instantly deploy both side curtain airbags and activate the front seat belt tensioners (see page 23).

The airbag on the passenger’s side will deploy, and the seat belt tensioner will activate, even if there are no passengers on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

How the SRS Indicator Works

The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags or seat belt tensioners (see page 23).

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.
Additional Information About Your Airbags

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

**WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

---

How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works

- **U.S.**
  - This indicator alerts you that the passenger’s side airbag has been automatically shut off. It does not mean there is a problem with your side airbags.

  When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the indicator should come on briefly and then go off (see page 63). If it doesn’t come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, have the system checked.

- **Canada**
  - If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
  - If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
  - If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

  If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.
Additional Information About Your Airbags

How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works

This indicator alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been shut off because weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child) on the front passenger’s seat. It does **not mean** there is a problem with the airbag.

Be aware that objects placed on the front seat can cause the indicator to come on.

If no weight is detected on the front seat, the airbag will be automatically shut off. However, the indicator will not come on.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

If an adult or teenage passenger is riding in front, move the seat as far to the rear as possible, and have the passenger sit upright and wear the seat belt properly.

CONTINUED
Additional Information About Your Airbags

If the indicator comes on with no front seat passenger and no objects on the seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger’s seat.
- Any object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object, such as a folded-down back seat, that is touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Airbag Service
Your airbag system is virtually maintenance-free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- An airbag ever inflates. Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. If a front airbag inflates, the seat belt tensioners must also be replaced.

Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by an authorized dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.

If water or another liquid soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly. This could make the driver’s seat position sensor or the front passenger’s weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact American Honda at 800-999-1009.

Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.

Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

If your vehicle has a moderate to severe impact. Even if your airbags do not inflate, your dealer should inspect the driver’s seat position sensor, the front passenger’s weight sensors, the front seat belt tensioners, and all seat belts worn during the crash to make sure they are operating properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

- Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason. Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.

- Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting your dealer. This could make the driver’s seat position sensor or the front passenger’s weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact American Honda at 800-999-1009.

- Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.

- Do not expose the front passenger’s seat-back to liquid. If water or another liquid soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly.
Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to properly protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

**Protecting Children — General Guidelines**

**All Children Must Be Restrained**
Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of the death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every U.S. state and Canadian province requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

*Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle* (see pages 43 — 52).

**WARNING**
Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

*Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly* (see pages 53 — 56).
Protecting Children — General Guidelines

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat
According to accident statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat. Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Children who ride in back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating front airbag when they ride in the back.

The Passenger’s Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks
Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collisions. To do this the passenger’s front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Even though your vehicle has an advanced front airbag system that automatically turns the passenger’s front airbag off (see page 35), please follow these guidelines:

Infants
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger’s front airbag. If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

Small Children
Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger’s front airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child’s head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

Larger Children
Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger’s front airbag. Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 53 for important information about protecting larger children).

CONTINUED
Protecting Children — General Guidelines

To remind you of the passenger’s front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (on U.S. models, the dashboard label is removed by the owner) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

**U.S. Models**

**SUN VISORS**

![WARNING](https://example.com/warning.png)

**DASHBOARD**

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags

Even with Advanced Air Bags

Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.

The back seat is the safest place for children.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.

Always use seat belts and child restraints.

See owner’s manual for more information about air bags.

To be removed by owner only.

**Canadian Models**

**SUN VISORS**

CAUTION: TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
- FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
- DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
- DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
- DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
- SEE THE OWNER’S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

PRÉCAUTION: POUR ÉVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
- POUR PROFITER D’UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D’UNE COLLISION, TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SÉCURITÉ.
- N’INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE À L’ARRIERE SUR LE SIÈGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
- NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSEZEZ PAS PRÈS DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
- NE DÉPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
- LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.
Protecting Children — General Guidelines

If You Must Drive with Several Children
Your vehicle has two rows of back seats where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 53).

- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 13).

- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 18).

- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 18).

If a Child Requires Close Attention
Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in a back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.
Protecting Children — General Guidelines

Additional Safety Precautions

- Never hold an infant or child on your lap. If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.

- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never let two children use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

- Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked. If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 49 and 50 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)

- Use the childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the rear doors. This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 83).

- Do not leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states and Canadian provinces, and can be very hazardous.

- Lock all doors and the tailgate when your vehicle is not in use. Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles.

- Keep vehicle keys/remote transmitters out of the reach of children. Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the tailgate, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.
Protecting Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the child reaches the seat maker’s weight or height limit for the seat, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby’s head, neck, and back.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position. If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

Child Seat Type

Rear-facing Child Seat Placement

A rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.

If the passenger’s front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

When properly installed in the second row, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It could also interfere with proper operation of the passenger’s advanced front airbag system.

CONTINUED
Protecting Infants and Small Children

In any of these situations, we strongly recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger’s seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

**WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a collision.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

**Protecting Small Children**

A child who is at least one year old, and who fits within the child seat maker’s weight and height limits, should be restrained in a forward-facing, upright child seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

**Child Seat Placement**

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a back seat, not the front.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger’s airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child’s head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

Even with advanced front airbags, which can automatically turn the passenger’s front airbag off (see page 35), a back seat is the safest place for a small child.

**Child Seat Type**

A child who is at least one year old, and who fits within the child seat maker’s weight and height limits, should be restrained in a forward-facing, upright child seat.
Protecting Infants and Small Children, Selecting a Child Seat

If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

**WARNING**

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

**Selecting a Child Seat**

When buying a child seat, you need to choose either a conventional child seat, or one designed for use with the lower anchors and tethers for children (LATCH) system.

Conventional child seats must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas LATCH-compatible seats are secured by attaching the seat to hardware built into the two outer second row seats.

Since LATCH-compatible child seats are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

We also recommend selecting a LATCH-compatible seat with a rigid, rather than a flexible, anchor (see page 47).

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of seat you choose, to provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:
Selecting a Child Seat, Installing a Child Seat

1. The child seat should meet U.S. or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. Look for FMVSS 213 or CMVSS 213 on the box.

2. The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child. Rear-facing for infants, forward-facing for small children.

3. The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.

Before purchasing a conventional child seat, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the seat in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the seat will be used.

Installing a Child Seat

After selecting a proper child seat and a good place to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

1. Properly secure the child seat to the vehicle. All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH (lower anchors and tethers for children) system. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

2. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured. After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child seat secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be “rock solid.” Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat’s effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured.

3. Secure the child in the child seat. Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide guidelines on how to properly install a child seat. A forward-facing child seat is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for rear-facing child seats.
Installing a Child Seat with LATCH

Your vehicle is equipped with LATCH (lower anchors and tethers for children) at the outer second row seats. The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

The location of each lower anchor is indicated by a small button above the anchor point.

To install a LATCH-compatible child seat:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchors.

2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.

3. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the child seat maker’s instructions.

Some LATCH-compatible seats have a rigid-type connector as shown above.

CONTINUED
Installing a Child Seat

4. Whatever type you have, follow the child seat maker’s instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.

5. Lift the head restraint (see page 91), then route the tether strap through the legs of the head restraint and over the seat-back, making sure the strap is not twisted.

6. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor, then tighten the strap as instructed by the child seat maker.

7. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Other LATCH-compatible seats have a flexible-type connector as shown above.
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat.

If you intend to install a child seat in the center seating position of the second row or in the third row, make sure the detachable seat belt is securely latched (see page 17).

1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.

2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.

CONTINUED
To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure.

To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat while pulling up on the belt.

5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.
Installing a Child Seat with a Tether
A child seat with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the second or third row seats.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.

Second Row Installation

Each second row seat has a tether anchorage point behind the seat-back.

1. After properly securing the child seat (see page 49), lift the head restraint, then route the tether strap over the seat-back and through the head restraint legs.

CONTINUED
Installing a Child Seat

2. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the tether strap is not twisted.

Tighten the strap according to the seat maker’s instructions.

Third Row Installation

Each third row seat has a tether anchorage point on the tailgate sill.

1. After properly securing the child seat (see page 51), lift the head restraint, then route the tether strap over the seat-back and through the head restraint legs.

2. Slide the anchor cover open as shown, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.

3. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker’s instructions.

Follow steps 1 and 2 of the second row seat installation.
To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?

2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

CONTINUED
Protecting Larger Children

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child’s neck and arm?

4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child’s thighs?

5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

Using a Booster Seat

A child who has outgrown a forward-facing child seat should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Some states and Canadian provinces also require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the states or provinces where you intend to drive.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets federal safety standards (see page 45) and that you follow the booster seat maker’s instructions.

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle’s or booster’s seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.
When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

If the passenger’s front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child’s body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

Physical Size
Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 16 and 53). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

Maturity
To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner’s manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rearmost position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child’s seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.
Protecting Larger Children

Additional Safety Precautions

• Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.

• Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm. This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.

• Two children should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

• Do not put any accessories on a seat belt. Devices intended to improve a child’s comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
Your vehicle’s exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in an accident that may have damaged the underside.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you. Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the tailgate open, air flow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle’s interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the heating and cooling system/climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the heating and cooling system/climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the 🌬️ mode.
3. Turn the fan on high speed.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.
Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label, which is removed by the owner), contact your dealer for a replacement.
This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control Locations</th>
<th>60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instrument Panel</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument Panel Indicators</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip Meter</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odometer</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Gauge</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Gauge</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside Temperature Indicator</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Fuel Cap Message</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls Near the Steering Wheel</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windshield Wipers and Washers</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn Signal, Headlights</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Lighting Off Feature</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daytime Running Lights</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument Panel Brightness</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazard Warning Button</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Window Defogger</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering Wheel Adjustment</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keys and Locks</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobilizer System</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition Switch</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door Locks</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Door Locks</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailgate</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childproof Door Locks</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Transmitter</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Heaters</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head Restraints</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrors</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Windows</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moonroof</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Brake</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Convenience Items</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beverage Holders</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console Compartment</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove Box</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunglasses Holder</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversation Mirror</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Visor</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity Mirror</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessory Power Sockets</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Lights</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Control Locations

* : If equipped.

60
The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.

* : If equipped.
**Instrument Panel Indicators**

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.

- **Seat Belt Reminder Indicator**
  This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

  If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

  If you continue driving without fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes again at regular intervals.

- **Malfunction Indicator Lamp**
  See page 277.

- **Low Oil Pressure Indicator**
  The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running. For more information, see page 276.

- **Charging System Indicator**
  If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. For more information, see page 276.
Instrument Panel Indicators

Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, passenger’s side airbag automatic cutoff system, side curtain airbags, automatic seat belt tensioners, driver’s seat position sensor, or the front passenger’s seat weight sensors. For more information, see page 33.

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. A beeper sounds if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tires.

2. If it stays on after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the brake system. For more information, see page 278.

Side Airbag Off Indicator
This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger’s side airbag has automatically shut off. For more information, see page 34.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. If this happens, have your vehicle checked at a dealer. With this on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock brakes. For more information, see page 210.
### Instrument Panel Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immobilizer System Indicator</strong></td>
<td>This indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have inserted a properly-coded ignition key. If it is not a properly-coded key, the indicator will blink, and the engine will not start (see page 79 ). This indicator also blinks several times when you turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) position to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VSA System Indicator</strong></td>
<td>This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on and stays on at any other time, or if it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. See page 211 for more information on the VSA system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **VSA Activation Indicator** | This indicator has three functions:  
1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.  
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 211).  
3. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system. This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. For more information, see page 211. |
This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If it comes on while driving, it indicates that one or more of your vehicle's tires are extremely low on pressure.

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tire has lost the pressure on the tire pressure monitor, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tire, replace the flat tire with the compact spare (see page 266), and have the flat tire repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tires are underinflated, call a professional towing service (see page 279). Refer to page 205 for more information.

The appropriate tire indicator will come on along with the low tire pressure indicator if a tire is extremely underinflated or has suddenly lost pressure. See **Low Tire Pressure Indicator** for what to do if this indicator comes on.

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If this indicator comes on and stays on at any other time, or if it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the TPMS. With this indicator on, the low tire pressure indicator and the tire pressure monitor will not come on when a tire loses pressure. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have the system checked.
Instrument Panel Indicators

Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If an indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see pages 249 and 252). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signal indicators and all turn signals on the outside of the vehicle flash.

Brake Lamp Indicator
If a brake light does not work, the BRAKE LAMP indicator comes on when you push the brake pedal with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.
A burned out brake light is a hazard when drivers behind you cannot tell you are braking. Replace the bulb as soon as possible (see page 252).

Door and Tailgate Open Monitor
The appropriate indicator comes on in this display if the tailgate or any door is not closed tightly.
All of the indicators in the monitor display come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
Instrument Panel Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DRL</strong> Daytime Running Lights Indicator</td>
<td><em>Canadian models only</em>&lt;br&gt;This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position with the headlight switch off and the parking brake set. It should go off when you turn on the headlights or release the parking brake. If it comes on at any other time, it means there is a problem with the DRL. There may also be a problem with the high beam headlights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>High Beam Indicator</strong></td>
<td><em>Canadian models only</em>&lt;br&gt;This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page 75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cruise Control Indicator</strong></td>
<td><em>Canadian models only</em>&lt;br&gt;This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page 175 for information on operating the cruise control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Washer Level Indicator</strong></td>
<td><em>Canadian models only</em>&lt;br&gt;This indicator comes on when the washer fluid level is low. Add washer fluid when you see this indicator (see page 243).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low Fuel Indicator</strong></td>
<td>This indicator comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon. When the indicator comes on, there is about 1.8 U.S. gal (7.0 L) of fuel remaining in the tank before the needle reaches E. There is a small reserve of fuel remaining in the tank when the needle does reach E.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Instrument Panel Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A/T Temperature</strong></td>
<td>This indicator monitors the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid. It should come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on while driving, it means the transmission fluid temperature is too high. Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VTM-4 Indicator</strong></td>
<td>This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the 4WD system. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. If the indicator blinks while driving, the VTM-4 fluid temperature is too high. Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fuel Economy Indicator</strong></td>
<td>While the engine is operating in its most economical range, this indicator may come on and stay on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**NOTICE**

*Continuing to drive with the A/T temperature indicator on may cause serious damage to the transmission.*

*Continuing to drive with the VTM-4 indicator blinking may cause serious damage to the system.*
This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the \( \square \) or \( \square \) position. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will stay on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver’s door.

This indicator comes on when you turn on the fog lights. For more information, see page 75.

This indicator reminds you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance. The maintenance main items and sub items will be displayed in the information display. See page 229 for more information on the maintenance minder.

This indicator goes off when your dealer resets it after completing the required maintenance service.
Gauges

Trip Meter
This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it.

There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Switch between these displays and the outside temperature display (except LX models) by pressing the Select/Reset knob repeatedly.

Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it, and then press and hold the Select/Reset knob until the number resets to “0.0”.

Odometer
The odometer shows the total distance your vehicle has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

Fuel Gauge
This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount. The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition.

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.
Temperature Gauge
This shows the temperature of the engine’s coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise from the bottom white mark to about the middle white mark. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the pointer may rise to the upper white mark. If it reaches the red (Hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. Turn to page 242 for instructions and precautions on checking the engine’s cooling system.

Outside Temperature Indicator
On EX and EX-L models
This indicator displays the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S. models) or Centigrade (Canadian models). To see the outside temperature, press and release the Select/Reset knob until the temperature is displayed.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Therefore, the temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h).

The sensor delays the display update until it reaches the correct outside temperature. This may take several minutes.

If the outside temperature is incorrectly displayed, you can adjust it up to ±5°F in U.S. models (±3°C in Canadian models) warmer or cooler.

NOTE: The temperature must be stabilized before doing this procedure.

Select the outside temperature indicator, then press the Select/Reset knob for 10 seconds. The following sequence will appear for 1 second each: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, –5, –4, –3, –2, –1, 0 (U.S.) or 0, 1, 2, 3, –3, –2, –1, 0 (Canada).

When the temperature reaches the desired value, release the Select/Reset knob. You should see the new outside temperature displayed.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing (32°F, 0°C) could mean that ice is forming on the road surface.
Gauges

Check Fuel Cap Message
Your vehicle’s on board diagnostic system will detect a loose or missing fuel fill cap as an evaporative system leak. The first time a leak is detected a “CHECK FUEL CAP” message appears on the information display.

Turn the engine off, and confirm the fuel fill cap is installed. If it is, loosen it, then retighten it until it clicks at least once. The message should go off after several days of normal driving once you tighten or replace the fuel fill cap. To scroll to another display, press the select/reset knob.

The “CHECK FUEL CAP” message will appear each time you restart the engine until the system turns the message off.

If the system still detects a leak in the vehicle’s evaporative emissions system, the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) comes on. If the fuel fill cap was not already tightened, turn the engine off, and check or retighten the fuel fill cap until it clicks at least once. The MIL should go off after several days of normal driving once the cap is tightened or replaced. If the MIL does not go off, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. For more information, see page 277.

Maintenance Minder Display
The information display in the instrument panel shows you the engine oil life and maintenance service items when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. This information helps to keep you aware of the periodic maintenance your vehicle needs for continued trouble-free driving. Refer to page 229 for more information.
If equipped.

To use the horn, press the pad around the “H” logo.

* 1: If equipped.
Windshield Wipers and Washers

Push the right lever up or down to select a position.

1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT — Intermittent
4. LO — Low speed
5. HI — High speed
6. Windshield washers

Windshield Washers — Pull the wiper control lever toward you, and hold it. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete one more sweep after you release the lever.

OFF — The wipers are not activated.

INT — The length of the wiper interval is varied automatically according to the vehicle’s speed. Vary the delay by turning the INT TIME ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay, the wiper speed will increase to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

LO — The wipers run at low speed.

HI — The wipers run at high speed.

Rear Window Wiper and Washer

1. Rotate the switch clockwise to turn the rear window wiper ON.
2. Hold past ON to spray the rear window washer.
3. OFF
4. Hold past OFF to spray the rear window washer and turn the rear window wiper on for a short interval.
Turn Signal and Headlights

**Turn Signal** — Push down on the lever to signal a left turn and up to signal a right turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever, and hold it. The lever will return to center when you release it or complete a turn.

**Headlights** — Turning the switch on the left lever to the position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights. If you leave the lights on with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver’s door.

**High Beams** — Push the lever forward until you hear a click. The high beam indicator will come on (see page 67). Pull the lever back to return to the low beams.

To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

**Fog Lights**

*On EX and EX-L models*

Turn the fog lights on and off by turning the switch next to the headlight switch.

You can use the fog lights only when the headlights are on low beam.

---

1. Turn signal
2. Off
3. Parking and indicator lights
4. Headlights
5. High beams
6. Flash high beams
7. Fog lights off (if equipped)
8. Fog lights on (if equipped)
Headlights, Instrument Panel Brightness

Automatic Lighting Off Feature  
*On EX and EX-L models*  
The automatic lighting off feature turns off the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights within 15 seconds of removing the key from the ignition switch and closing the driver’s door.

This feature activates if you leave the headlight switch in the ☽ or ☽ position, remove the key, then open and close the driver’s door.

If you remove the key from the ignition switch with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights will turn off after 10 minutes.

The lights will turn on again when you unlock or open the driver’s door.

If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. With the driver’s door open, you will hear a lights-on reminder chime.

Daytime Running Lights  
*(Canadian Models)*  
With the headlight switch off, the high beam headlights come on with reduced brightness when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition switch off, even if you set the parking brake.

The headlights revert to normal operation when you turn them on with the switch.

Instrument Panel Brightness  
The knob on the instrument panel controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights. Turn the knob to adjust the brightness.
The rear window defogger will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. The indicator above the button comes on to show the defogger is on. If you do not turn it off, the defogger will shut itself off after about 15 minutes. It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch. You have to turn the defogger on again when you restart the vehicle.

The defogger wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side-to-side.
Make any steering wheel adjustment before you start driving.

1. Push the lever under the steering column all the way down.
2. Move the steering wheel so it points to your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up and down.

**WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.
The master key fits all the locks on your vehicle. The valet key works only in the ignition and the door locks. You can keep the glove box locked when you leave your vehicle and the valet key at a parking facility.

You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Honda-approved key blanks.

**Immobilizer System**

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

**CONTINUED**
Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine will not start.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on for a few seconds, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle undrivable.

If you have lost your key and you cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK (0), ACCESSORY (I), ON (II), and START (III).

**LOCK (0)** — You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key, the shift lever must be in Park, and you must push the key in slightly.

**ACCESSORY (I)** — You can operate the audio system and the accessory power sockets in this position.

**ON (II)** — This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (I) to the ON (II) position.

**START (III)** — Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the key.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver’s door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.
Door Locks

Power Door Locks

To lock the doors and the tailgate, press the master door lock switch on either front door, press the lock tab down on the driver's door, or use the key on the outside lock on the driver's door.

Pressing up on either master door lock switch will unlock all of the doors and the tailgate.

The lock tab on any door locks and unlocks that door. To unlock the driver's door from the outside, turn the key and release it. If you turn and hold it, all doors and the tailgate unlock.

Lockout Prevention
With the driver's door open and the key in the ignition, both master door lock switches are disabled. They are not disabled if the driver's door is closed. Pushing the switch down on the open passenger's door will lock all doors and the tailgate.

Tailgate

To open the tailgate, pull the handle, then lift up. To close the tailgate, use the inner handle to pull it down, then press down on the back edge.

Keep the tailgate and the hatch glass closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the tailgate and the hatch glass, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See Carbon Monoxide Hazard on page 57.
Childproof Door Locks, Remote Transmitter

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position, the door cannot be opened from inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, pull the lock tab up, and use the outside door handle.

Remote Transmitter

LOCK — Press this button once to lock all doors and the tailgate. Some exterior and interior lights will flash. When you push LOCK twice within 5 seconds, you will hear a beep to verify that the security system has set. You cannot lock it if any door is not fully closed or the key is in the ignition switch.

UNLOCK — Press this button once to unlock the driver’s door. Push it twice to unlock the other doors and the tailgate. Some exterior lights will flash twice each time you press the button.

When you press the UNLOCK button, the front and rear individual map lights, depending on the interior light control switch position, will come on (see page 102). If you do not open any door, the lights stay on for about 30 seconds, then go out. If you relock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the lights will go off immediately.

If you do not open any door within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

CONTINUED
Remote Transmitter

**PANIC** — Press this button for about 1 second to attract attention; the horn will sound and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

**Remote Transmitter Care**
- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

**Replacing the Transmitter Battery**
If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors, replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616

To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.

2. Separate the transmitter by prying its middle seam with your fingernail.
3. Inside the transmitter, separate the inner cover from the keypad by releasing the two tabs on the cover.

4. Remove the old battery from the back of the inner cover, and insert a new battery into the back of the cover with the + side facing down.

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

5. Install the parts in reverse order.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
Seat Heaters

If equipped

Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. Because of the sensors for the side airbag system, there is no heater in the passenger's seatback. The ignition switch must be ON (II) to use the heaters.

Push the top of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the bottom of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In HI, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

In LO, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.

- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters, even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.
Power Seat Adjustments
On EX and EX-L models
See pages 13 — 14 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seatbacks.

The controls for the adjustable driver’s power seat are on the outside edge of the seat bottom. You can adjust the power seat with the ignition switch in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

Moving the long horizontal switch adjusts the seat bottom in several directions. The seat bottom adjusts in the direction you move the switch. The short vertical switch adjusts the seat-back angle.

- Raises or lowers the seat.
- Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.
- Moves the seat forward and backward.
- Moves the front of the seat up or down and the rear of the seat up or down.
Seats

**Driver's Lumbar Support**
*On EX and EX-L models*

To change the lumbar support, move the lever on the right side of the seat-back forward or backward. Keep moving the lever forward or backward until you find a suitable position.

---

**Manual Seat Adjustments**

To adjust the seat forward and backward, pull up on the lever under the front seat cushion. Then try to move the seat to make sure it is locked into position.

---

To change the seat-back angle of the front seat, pull up the lever on the outside of the seat bottom.
The left and right halves can be folded separately.

If you are folding the left half of the seat, use the ignition key to release the center seat belt from the detachable anchor (see page 18).

Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

Pull up the handle on the outside of the seat-back.

Fold the seat-back forward.

To change the angle of the seats in the second row seat-backs, pull up the handle on the seat-back. Moving the short vertical switch forward or backward adjusts the seat back in those directions.

To adjust the seats forward and backward, pull up on the lever under the seat cushion. After moving the seat, make sure it is locked into position.

The height of your driver’s seat is adjustable. Turn the front dial on the outside of the seat cushion to raise the front of the seat bottom, and turn the rear dial to raise the rear.

Reverse this procedure to return the seat to its upright position. Make sure the seat is locked and secured before driving.
Seats

**Third Seat Access**

To get into the third row seats, pull up the lever on the side of the passenger’s side second row seat-back. The seat-back will tilt forward, and the seat will slide forward.

Push the whole seat backwards until fully latches. Make sure the seat is locked and secured before driving.

**Adjusting the Third Row Seat**

Pull on the handle on the back of the seat-back, move the seat-back to the desired position, and release the handle. Let the seat-back latch in the new position.

**Folding the Third Row Seat**

1. Remove the head restraints by pushing the release buttons and pulling the restraints out.

2. Store the head restraints under the cargo area floor. Insert the shafts into the holes in the sides of the storage compartment.
3. Use the ignition key to release the seat belt from the detachable anchor (see page 18).

4. Unlock the seat-back by pulling the handle. Push the seat-back forward.

Make sure you clip the small latch plate of each outer shoulder belt to the seat belt webbing whenever the third seat is folded.

Reverse this procedure to return the seat to its upright position.

Reinstall the head restraints, reconnect the seat belts, and make sure the seats are secured before driving.

Make sure all items in the cargo area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See Carrying Cargo on page 193).

They are most effective when you adjust them so the back of the occupant’s head rests against the center of the restraint.

The head restraints in the second and third row seats adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. To raise it, pull upward. To lower it, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.

See page 15 for important safety information and a warning about how to properly position the head restraints.

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from whiplash and other injuries.
Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.

If equipped
The rear view mirror has a compass function to indicate the vehicle’s direction. Refer to Compass on page 177.
Adjusting the Power Mirrors

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Move the selector switch to L (driver's side) or R (passenger's side).
3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the center (off) position. This turns the adjustment switch off to keep your settings.

Power Mirror Heaters

If equipped

The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off.
Power Windows

Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window. To open a window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

The windows will operate for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

To open or close the driver's window partially, push down or pull back on the window switch lightly and hold it. The window will stop when you release the switch.

If the MAIN switch is OFF, the passenger windows cannot be raised or lowered. Keep the MAIN switch on when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

**WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**AUTO** — To open the driver's window fully, push the window switch firmly down, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

To close the driver's window fully, pull back the window switch firmly, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.
**Power Windows**

**AUTO REVERSE** — If the driver's window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the driver's window fuse is removed, the AUTO function will be disabled. The power window system needs to be reset after reconnecting the battery or installing the fuse.

1. Start the engine. Push down and hold the driver's window switch until the window is fully open.

2. Pull and hold the driver's window switch to close the window completely, then hold the switch for about 2 seconds.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, have your vehicle checked by your dealer.
Moonroof

If equipped

The moonroof has two positions: it can be tilted up in the back for ventilation, or it can be slid back into the roof. Use the switch under the left dashboard vent to operate the moonroof. The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position.

To tilt up the back of the moonroof, press and hold the center button \( \uparrow \). To close the moonroof, press and hold the upper button \( \downarrow \). To open the moonroof, press and hold the lower button \( \uparrow \). Release the button when the moonroof gets to the desired position. Make sure everyone’s hands are away from the moonroof before opening or closing it.

The moonroof has a key-off delay function. You can still open and close the moonroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay function cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to operate the moonroof.

\[ \text{NOTICE} \]

If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

\[ \text{WARNING} \]

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone’s hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.
To apply the parking brake, push the pedal down with your foot. To release it, push on the pedal again. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 63).

**NOTICE**

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and axles. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.
Interior Convenience Items

* : If equipped.
### Interior Convenience Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beverage Holders</th>
<th>Console Compartment</th>
<th>Glove Box</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Liquid can also spill from the rear door pocket beverage holders when you close the rear doors. Use only resealable containers in the door pockets. The front beverage holders can be installed under the slide. Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.</td>
<td>To open the console compartment, pull up on the lever, and lift the lid. Pivot the door of the console forward and you can store a cellular phone, a small notepad, and business cards in it.</td>
<td>Open the glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the master key. The glove box light comes on when the parking lights are on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.
**Interior Convenience Items**

**Sunglasses Holder**

To open the sunglasses holder, push on the front edge. Make sure the holder is closed while you are driving.

Some larger styles of sunglasses may not fit in the holder.

**Conversation Mirror**

You may also store small items in this holder. Make sure they are small enough to let the holder close and latch, and that they are not heavy enough to cause the holder to pop open while driving.

*On EX-L models*

The sunglasses holder uses a convex mirror for its bottom panel. You can see all the vehicle passengers in this mirror. To use the mirror, open the sunglasses holder fully, push it to the first detent, and release it.
Sun Visor

When using the sun visor for the side window, remove the support rod from the clip and swing it out. Slide the extension out to get more coverage on the side window.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle. Do not use the extended sun visor over the rear view mirror.

Vanity Mirror

To use the vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

The light comes on when you pull up the cover.

The vanity mirror light will not come on if the sun visor is slid outward.

Accessory Power Sockets

Each socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

None of the sockets will power an automotive type cigarette lighter element. When both sockets are being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should be 120 watts or less (10 amps).
AC Power Outlet
*If equipped*

There is a 115 volt AC power outlet in the console compartment. To use the AC power outlet, open the console compartment lid and open the outlet cover. Insert the plug into the receptacle slightly, turn it 90° clockwise, then push in the plug all the way.

Always run the engine when you use the AC Power Outlet.

The maximum capacity for this power outlet is 115 volt AC at 100 watts or less. If you use an appliance which requires more than 100 watts, it automatically stops supplying the power. If this happens, turn the ignition switch off and turn it on again.

**NOTE:** The AC power outlet is not designed for electric appliances which require high initial peak wattage such as cathode-ray tube type televisions, refrigerators, electric pumps, etc. It is also not suitable for devices that process precise data such as medical equipment or measuring instruments. Any appliances that require an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc., should not be connected to this outlet.

Light Control Switch

*When this switch is in the ON position:*
- All the individual map lights come on and stay on as long as the switch remains in the ON position.

*When the switch is in the OFF position:*
- None of the lights come on when a door or the tailgate is opened.
- The individual map lights in the front can be turned on and off with the switches next to the lights.
Interior Lights

- The individual map lights in the second and third rows cannot be turned on.

**When the switch is in the Door Activated position:**
- The individual map lights come on when any door or the tailgate is opened, or when the remote transmitter is used to unlock the doors.
- The individual map lights in the second and third rows can be turned on and off by pressing the lens.
- The tailgate light comes on when you open the tailgate if the light switch is in the ON position.
- The lights go out about 6 seconds after all the doors and the tailgate are closed. With any door or the tailgate left open, the lights stay on about 3 minutes, then go out.

**Individual Map Lights**
Turn on the front and rear individual map lights by pushing the lens of each light. Push the lens again to turn it off. You can also operate these lights with the light control switch (see page 102).

**Tailgate Light**
The light in the tailgate has an on-off switch to control if the light comes on when the tailgate is opened.

**Individual Interior Lights**
The courtesy lights in the front doors and around the ignition switch come on when you open any door. After you close the door, the ignition switch light stays on for several seconds.

**Courtesy Lights**
The courtesy light between the map lights comes on when you turn the parking lights on. To adjust its brightness, turn the Select/Reset knob on the instrument panel.
The heating and air conditioning system in your vehicle provides a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

The standard audio system has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

*On EX and EX-L models*

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

The security system helps to discourage vandalism and theft of your vehicle.
Vents, Heating, and A/C

LX MODEL

EX and EX-L MODEL

TEMPERATURE CONTROL DIAL
RECIRCULATION BUTTON
REAR WINDOW DEFROGGER BUTTON
FAN CONTROL DIAL

AIR CONDITIONING BUTTON
MODE CONTROL DIAL

TEMPERATURE DISPLAY
FAN SPEED INDICATOR
FAN CONTROL BUTTONS

REAR A/C MANUAL BUTTON
OFF BUTTON
RECIRCULATION BUTTON
WINDSHIELD DEFROST BUTTON
REAR WINDOW DEFROGGER BUTTON

AUTO BUTTON

TEMPERATURE CONTROL DIAL
AUTO BUTTON

OFF BUTTON

RECIRCULATION BUTTON
FULL AUTO

A/C ON
A/C OFF

MODE

A/C
Vents, Heating, and A/C

Voice Control System
On vehicles with navigation system
The climate control system can also be operated by voice control. See the Navi section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system, and the navigation system manual for complete details.

On EX and EX-L models, see page 112 for information on automatic climate control and semi-automatic operation.

Fan Control
On LX models
Turn the dial clockwise to increase the fan speed and airflow. Turn the dial counterclockwise to decrease it.

On EX and EX-L models
Select the fan speed by pressing the fan control buttons ( or ). The fan speed is shown in vertical bars on the display.

Temperature Control Dial
Turning this dial clockwise increases the temperature of the airflow.

On EX and EX-L models
The temperature setting is shown in the display.

Air Conditioning (A/C) Button
This button turns the air conditioning on and off. On LX models, the indicator in the button is on when the A/C is on. On EX and EX-L models, you will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

On EX and EX-L models
When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the dial below the outside air temperature.

RR A/C MANUAL Button
On EX and EX-L models
Press the RR A/C MANUAL button to adjust the temperature of the rear passenger compartment independently. See page 113 for information using the rear A/C unit.
Vents, Heating, and A/C

**Recirculation Button**
When the indicator in the button is on, air from the vehicle’s interior is sent throughout the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the heating and cooling system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

**Rear Window Defogger Button**
This button turns the rear window defogger off and on (see page 77).

**Mode Control**
Use the mode control dial or button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.

On EX and EX-L models:
Each time you press the MODE button, the display shows the mode selected.

- Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard.
- Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.
- Air flows from the floor vents.

Airflow is divided between the floor vents and the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

Air flows from the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

On LX models:
When you select exits or , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. In this case, you cannot turn the A/C off.

On EX and EX-L models:
When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.
**MAX A/C**

On LX models, the system automatically turns on the A/C and switches to recirculation mode. Air flows from the center and side vents in the dashboard. In this mode, you cannot turn off the A/C and also cannot switch to fresh air mode.

When you switch from A/C to another mode, the A/C returns to its original setting, either on or off, as displayed by the A/C indicator.

**Ventilation**
The flow-through ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then discharges it through vents near the tailgate.

1. Set the temperature to the lower limit.
2. Make sure the A/C is off.
3. Select 🌙 and fresh air mode.
4. Set the fan to the desired speed.

**Using the Heater**
The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system.

1. Select 🌙 and fresh air mode.
2. Set the fan to the desired speed.
3. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control dial.

**Using the A/C**
Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Watch the engine coolant temperature gauge (see page 71). If it moves near the red zone, turn off the A/C until the gauge reading returns to normal.

1. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on when a fan speed is selected (LX model), or the display shows A/C ON (EX and EX-L models).
2. Make sure the temperature is set to maximum cool.
3. Select 🌙 .
4. If the outside air is humid, select recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select fresh air mode.
5. Set the fan to the desired speed.
Vents, Heating, and A/C

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning on the A/C, and setting the fan to maximum speed in fresh air mode.

**NOTE:** The vehicle has two A/C units, one is in the front, and the other is in the rear. The LX units are independently controlled. The EX and EX-L units are controlled by the front panel controls, unless the RR A/C MANUAL button is selected.

**On LX models**
To cool the interior with MAX A/C:
1. Set the fan to the desired speed.
2. Select MAX A/C.
   - The system automatically turns on the A/C, selects , and switches to recirculation mode.
3. Make sure the temperature is set to maximum cool.

To Dehumidify the Interior
Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

1. Turn the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select and fresh air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature control dial to your preference.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 32°F (0°C).

To Defog and Defrost
To remove fog from the inside of the windows:
1. Set the fan to the desired speed, or high for faster defrosting.
2. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. The A/C indicator (LX model) or the A/C ON indicator in the display (EX and EX-L models) will not be displayed if it was previously off.
3. Adjust the temperature control dial so the airflow feels warm.
4. Select to help clear the rear window.
When you switch to , from or , the A/C stays on. This helps prevent the windows from rapidly fogging up when the air is suddenly routed away from the windshield. If you want to turn the A/C off, press and release the A/C button until the indicator in the button comes on and then goes off.

On LX models
- When you switch to , from or , the A/C stays on. This helps prevent the windows from rapidly fogging up when the air is suddenly routed away from the windshield. If you want to turn the A/C off, press and release the A/C button until the indicator in the button comes on and then goes off.

On EX and EX-L models
- When you press again or the MODE button, the A/C returns to its original setting, either on or off, as displayed by the A/C ON or A/C OFF indicator. If the original setting is A/C OFF, the system switches to AUTO.

To Remove Exterior Frost or Ice From the Windows
1. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. The A/C indicator (LX model) or the A/C ON indicator in the display (EX and EX-L models) will not be displayed if it was previously off.
2. Select .
3. Set the fan and temperature controls to maximum level.

To clear the windows faster, you can close the dashboard corner vents by rotating the wheel below it. This will send more warm air to the windshield defroster vents. Continuous use of the recirculation mode can cause humidity to build up inside the vehicle. Once the windshield is clear, select the fresh air mode to avoid fogging the windows.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.
Vents, Heating, and A/C

**Automatic Climate Control**
*On EX and EX-L models*
The automatic climate control system adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the interior temperature you select.

1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Set the desired temperature by turning the temperature control dial. You will see FULL AUTO in the system’s display.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.

**When you set the temperature to its lower limit (Lo) or its upper limit (Hi), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.**

In cold weather, the fan will not come on automatically until the heater starts to develop warm air.

**Rear A/C Control** — When the system is in FULL AUTO, the rear A/C passenger control dial cannot be used. Pressing the button disables the FULL AUTO function.

**Semi-automatic Operation**
You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in FULL AUTO. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word FULL in the display to go out.

**To Turn Everything Off**
*On LX models*
Turning the fan control dial to the off position shuts the system off.

*On EX and EX-L models*
If you press OFF, the climate control system shuts off completely.

- Keep the system completely off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.
Using the Rear A/C Unit

On LX models
A passenger in the second row can use the rear fan control dial to adjust the amount of airflow to the rear passenger compartment.

On EX and EX-L models
Press the RR A/C MANUAL button to enable the rear temperature control dial; a second row passenger can now adjust the temperature in the rear passenger compartment with the rear temperature control dial.

All models
The rear climate control system has upper and lower vents. The system can direct airflow to either the upper or lower vent. It cannot direct airflow to both vents at the same time.

On LX models

![Cool Air](COOL AIR)

![Warm Air](WARM AIR)

- OFF (center) — The rear A/C unit shuts off.
- Cool Air — Turn this dial counterclockwise to increase the airflow.
- Warm Air — Turn this dial clockwise to increase the airflow.

On EX and EX-L models

When the RR A/C MANUAL button is on, you can adjust the temperature of the rear passenger compartment manually from the second row seat.

When the RR A/C MANUAL button is off, the temperature in the rear passenger compartment is controlled by the front passenger with front control panel.

CONTINUED
Vents, Heating, and A/C

The climate control system has two sensors. A sunlight sensor is in the top of the dashboard, and a temperature sensor is next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.

**Cool Air** — Turn this dial counterclockwise to increase the temperature.

**Warm Air** — Turn this dial clockwise to increase the temperature.

**OFF** (center) — The rear A/C unit shuts off.
Some models may have one of the audio systems described in this section. Read the appropriate pages in this section for operation of the audio systems installed in your models.

- See page 117 to 121 for playing the Radio.
- Only U.S. EX-L models
  See page 124 to 129 for playing the XM® Satellite Radio.
- See page 130 to 137 for playing a Disc.
Audio System

AM/FM/CD Changer Audio System with rear entertainment system

AM/FM/CD Changer Audio System with navigation system

(EX-L models)
On U.S. models

(EX-L models)
On Canadian models

(EX-L models)
On U.S. models

(EX-L models)
On Canadian models
Playing the Radio

Features

- Preset buttons
- Scan button
- Auto select button
- Stereo indicator
- Tune/mode knob
- Am/fm button
- Pwr/vol knob
- Seek/skip bar

(U.S. and Canadian models)

- Am button
- Fm button
- Sound knob
- Scan button
- Auto select button

(Ex and Ex-L models)

- Am/fm button
- Pwr/vol knob
- Tune knob
- Stereo indicator

(Ex-L models with rear entertainment system)

- Am button
- Fm button
- Pwr/vol knob
- Scan button
- Auto select button
- Preset buttons
- Seek buttons
Playing the Radio

To Play the Radio
The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the PWR/VOL knob or the AM/FM button. (AM or FM button on U.S. EX model and Canadian model).
Adjust the volume by turning the PWR/VOL knob.
The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed.
To change bands, press the AM/FM button (AM or FM button). On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

To Select a Station
You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, seek, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TUNE</th>
<th>Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob right to tune to a higher frequency, or left to tune to a lower frequency.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SEEK</td>
<td>The SEEK function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the ( \pm ) ((-)) or ( \uparrow ) ((+)) side of the bar, then release it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCAN</td>
<td>The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESET</th>
<th>Each preset button ((1-6)) can store one station on AM, and two stations on FM.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store twelve stations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Pick a preset number ((1-6)), and hold it until you hear a beep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. “A. SEL” flashes in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. It stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a “0” displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL (auto select) button. This restores the presets you originally set.

Adjusting the Sound
Press the MODE or SOUND knob repeatedly to display the Bass (BAS), Treble (TRE), Fader (FAD), and Balance (BAL) settings.

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the TUNE/SOUND knob to adjust the setting to your liking. When the level reaches the center, you will see “C” in the display. The system will automatically return the display to the selected audio mode about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

Balance/Fader — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Treble/Bass — Use the TRE/BAS modes to adjust the tone to your liking.

Audio System Lighting
You can use the instrument panel brightness control knob to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 76). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the system is turned off.
Playing the Radio

Voice Control System
On vehicles with navigation system
The audio system can also be operated by voice control. See the Navi section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system, and the navigation system manual for complete details.

Operating the Radio on the Navigation System Screen

On vehicles with navigation system
In addition to the knobs, buttons, and bars on the radio control panel, you can operate some of the radio controls on the navigation system screen.

While you are listening to the radio, you can change to another band by pressing the AUDIO button next to the navigation system screen, and then touching the desired band icon (FM1, FM2, or AM).

AUTO SELECT, SCAN, and SOUND are adjustable from the navigation screen. For an explanation of these functions, see pages 118 and 119.

AUTO SELECT — Touch the A.SEL icon to activate the auto select function. You will see A.SEL flashing on the display.

SCAN — Touch the SCAN icon to activate the scan function. You will see SCAN on the display. Touch the icon again to deactivate it.

Voice Control System
On vehicles with navigation system
The audio system can also be operated by voice control. See the Navi section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system, and the navigation system manual for complete details.

Operating the Radio on the Navigation System Screen

On vehicles with navigation system
In addition to the knobs, buttons, and bars on the radio control panel, you can operate some of the radio controls on the navigation system screen.

While you are listening to the radio, you can change to another band by pressing the AUDIO button next to the navigation system screen, and then touching the desired band icon (FM1, FM2, or AM).

AUTO SELECT, SCAN, and SOUND are adjustable from the navigation screen. For an explanation of these functions, see pages 118 and 119.

AUTO SELECT — Touch the A.SEL icon to activate the auto select function. You will see A.SEL flashing on the display.

SCAN — Touch the SCAN icon to activate the scan function. You will see SCAN on the display. Touch the icon again to deactivate it.
**Adjusting the Sound**

To adjust the sound, push the AUDIO button, then enter the sound grid by touching the SOUND icon on the display.

**Left/Right Balance and Front/Rear Fader** — These modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. Left/Right balance adjusts the side-to-side strength, while Front/Rear fader adjusts the front-to-back strength. To adjust the left/right balance, touch the “L” or “R” icon. To adjust the front/rear fader, touch the “FR” or “RR” icon.

To see the audio display when you are finished adjusting the sound, wait 5 seconds.

**Treble/Bass** — To adjust the treble and bass, touch + or - on each side of the treble or bass adjustment bar. The adjustment bar shows you the current setting.

**Audio System Lighting**
You can use the instrument panel brightness control dial to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 76). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is off.
Radio Frequencies
The radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands.
Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band: 530 to 1,710 kHz
FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least 10 kHz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 MHz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as “FM101.”

Radio Reception
How well the radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station’s transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

A radio station’s signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station’s signal.

Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio’s reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.
Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.

Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio

U.S. EX-L models

- PWR/VOL KNOB
- XM BUTTON
- DISP/MODE BUTTON
- TUNE KNOB
- SCAN BUTTON
- PRESET BUTTONS
- CATEGORY BAR

U.S. EX-L models with rear entertainment system

- PWR/VOL KNOB
- XM BUTTON
- DISP/MODE BUTTON
- TUNE KNOB
- SCAN BUTTON
- PRESET BUTTONS
- CATEGORY BAR
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio

U.S. EX and EX-L models only
Your audio system is capable of receiving XM® Satellite Radio anywhere in the United States, except Hawaii and Alaska.

XM® is a registered trademark of XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

XM radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM radio allows you to view channel and category selections in the display. The navigation system screen also shows all XM information when the AUDIO button is pressed.

Operating the XM Radio
To listen to XM radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Push the PWR/VOL knob to turn on the audio system, and press the “XM” button. Adjust the volume by turning the PWR/VOL knob. The last channel you listened to will show in the display.

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist’s name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

On the audio display, you will see the selected CHANNEL (number), CATEGORY, NAME (artist name), and TITLE (music title).

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist’s name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

CONTINUED
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio

**TUNE** — Turn the TUNE knob left or right to select channels. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

**SEEK/SKIP (CATEGORY)** — Press either side of the CATEGORY bar (− or +) to select another category.

**SCAN** — The scan function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the channels within that category are scanned. To activate scan, press the SCAN/RPT button or touch the SCAN icon on the audio display. The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the button or touch the icon again.

**Preset** — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons or preset icons on the audio display. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the XM button. Either XM1 or XM2 will show in the display.
2. Use the TUNE knob, or the CATEGORY or SCAN buttons to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick a preset number (icon) you want for that channel. Press and hold the bar (icon) until you hear a beep.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the XM button again or touch the other XM icon (XM1 or XM2) on the audio display. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, press and release the proper preset button (icon) to tune to it.
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio

XM Radio Display Messages

“LOADING” — XM is loading the audio or program information.

“OFF AIR” — The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

“UPDATING” — The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

“NO SIGNAL” — The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

“----” — The selected channel number does not exist or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

“ANTENNA” — There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.
The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.

Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator. Carrying large items on a roof rack can also block the signal.
Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.
- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.
- Large items carried on a roof rack.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM radio reception.

As required by the FCC: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

Receiving Satellite Radio Service
If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM satellite radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, push the PWR/VOL knob to turn on the audio system and press the XM RADIO button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

If you decide to purchase XM satellite radio service, contact XM Radio at www.xmradio.com, or at 1-800-852-9696. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, turn the TUNE knob until “0” appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the satellite radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, you’ll be able to listen to XM radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM Radio.
Playing a Disc

(LX models) CD BUTTON, REPEAT INDICATOR

PWR/VOL KNOB

SEEK/SKIP BAR, RANDOM INDICATOR, RANDOM BUTTON

CD SLOT, CD EJECT BUTTON

CD LOAD INDICATOR, LOAD BUTTON

PWR/VOL KNOB, REPEAT BUTTON

PRESET BUTTONS, SKIP BAR

(EX and EX-L models) CD SLOT

CD EJECT BUTTON

CD LOAD INDICATOR

PWR/VOL KNOB, REPEAT BUTTON

PRESET BUTTONS, SKIP BAR

(EX-L models with rear entertainment system) CD SLOT

CD EJECT BUTTON

CD LOAD INDICATOR

PWR/VOL KNOB, REPEAT BUTTON

PRESET BUTTONS, SKIP BAR
Playing a Disc, Disc Changer

To Play a CD
To load or play CDs, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON(II) position.

You operate the CD player/CD changer with the same controls used for the radio. To select the CD player/CD changer, press the CD button. The number of the track playing is shown in the display. With the in-dash CD changer, the disc and track numbers are displayed. The system will continuously play a CD until you change modes.

To select a different disc, press the appropriate preset button (1–6). On models with navigation system, touch the appropriate disc icon. If you select an empty position in the CD changer, the system will go into the loading sequence.

LX models
Insert a CD about halfway into the CD slot. The drive will pull the CD in the rest of the way and begin to play it. When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play the disc again.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.

NOTICE
Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

To play the radio when a CD is playing, press the AM/FM button (AM or FM button). Press the CD button again to switch back to the CD player.

On models with Satellite Radio
To listen to satellite radio when a CD is playing, press the AUX/XM or XM button.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.
Playing a Disc, Disc Changer

Loading CDs in the In-dash CD Changer

Except for LX model
1. Press and hold the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see “LOAD” in the display, then release the button. To load only one CD, press and release the LOAD button.
2. On the upper left side of the display, the disc number for an empty position will begin blinking, and the green CD load indicator will come on.
3. Insert the CD into the CD slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see “BUSY” in the display. The CD loaded indicator turns red and blinks as the CD is loaded.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.
4. When “LOAD” appears again in the display, insert the next CD into the CD slot.

Do not try to insert a disc until “LOAD” appears. You could damage the audio unit.
5. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. The system will then begin playing the last CD loaded.

If you are not loading CDs into all six positions, press the LOAD button again after the last CD has loaded. The system will begin playing the last CD loaded.

If you stop loading CDs before all six positions are filled, the system will wait for 10 seconds, then stop the load operation and begin playing the last CD loaded.

SKIP — Each time you press and release ➤ /(+), the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release ◀ /(-) to skip backward to the beginning of the previous track.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the ➤ /(+) or ◀ /(-). You will see CUE or REW in the display.

REPEAT — To continuously replay a track, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press it again to turn it off.

RANDOM — This feature plays the tracks in random order. To activate random play, press and release the RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. This continues until you press the RDM button again.
Playing a Disc, Disc Changer

Track Repeat
*On vehicles with navigation system*
When you press and release the RPT button or touch the TRACK REPEAT icon on the screen, the system continuously replays the current track. As a reminder, you will see RPT (TRACK REPEAT) in the display. To turn this feature off, press the RPT button, or touch the TRACK REPEAT icon again.

Disc Repeat
*On vehicles with navigation system*
When you press and hold the RPT button until D-RPT (DISC REPEAT) is in the display, or when you touch the DISC REPEAT icon on the screen, the system continuously replays the current disc. As a reminder, you will see D-RPT in the display.

Random Play within a Disc
*On vehicles with navigation system*
When you press the RDM button or touch the TRACK RANDOM icon on the screen, the system plays the tracks of the current disc in random order. You will see RDM (TRACK RANDOM) in the display. To turn this feature off, press the RDM button (touch TRACK RANDOM) again.

To Stop Playing a CD
*On LX models*
Press the eject button (▲) to remove the CD. If you eject the CD, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the CD after 10 seconds and put it in pause mode. To begin playing, press the CD button.

Press the AM/FM button to switch to the radio while a CD is playing. Press the CD button to play the CD.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the PWR/VOL knob or by turning off the ignition, the CD will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.
Playing a Disc, Disc Changer

Removing CDs from the In-dash CD Changer
Except for LX model
To remove the disc currently in play, press the eject ( △ ) button. When a disc is removed from a slot, the system automatically begins the load sequence so you can load another CD in that position. If you do not remove the disc from the changer within 15 seconds, the system returns to the previous mode (AM/FM or satellite radio). The disc will reload into the system and will remain there in a pause mode.

To remove a different CD from the changer, first select it with the appropriate preset button. When that CD begins playing, press the eject button. Continue pressing the eject button to remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off. The disc that was last selected is ejected first.

To eject one disc, press and release the eject button.

To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button until the system beeps.

Operating the Optional CD Changer
Optional on LX models
Load the desired CDs into the magazine, and load the magazine into the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit.

To select the CD changer, press the CD button. The CD and track numbers will be displayed. To select a different CD, use the preset 5 (DISC −) or preset 6 (DISC +) button. If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot.
General Information
- When using CD-R discs, use only high quality CDs labeled for audio use.

- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the system.

- Play only standard round CDs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

- Handle your CDs properly to prevent damage and skipping. See this page.

**NOTICE**

*Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.*

Protecting Discs
When a CD is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a CD, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the CD from the center to the outside edge.

A new CD may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the CD, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the CD player or the CD changer.

Handle a CD by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD. These, along with contamination from fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the CD to not play properly or possibly jam in the drive.
Disc Player Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc.

Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

### LX models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD DISC</td>
<td>FOCUS Error</td>
<td>Press the EJECT button and pull out the CD. Check if it is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the CD is not scratched or damaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD ERR</td>
<td>Mechanical Error, or a DVD has been loaded in the CD player</td>
<td>Press the EJECT button and pull out the CD. Check the CD for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out, or the error message does not disappear after the CD is ejected, see your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD HOT</td>
<td>High Temperature</td>
<td>Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EX and EX-L models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD DISC ERROR</td>
<td>FOCUS Error</td>
<td>Press the EJECT button and pull out the CD. Check if it is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the CD is not scratched or damaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD MECH ERROR</td>
<td>Mechanical Error, or a DVD has been loaded in the CD player</td>
<td>Press the EJECT button and pull out the CD. Check the CD for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out, or the error message does not disappear after the CD is ejected, see your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD HEAT ERROR</td>
<td>High Temperature</td>
<td>Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disc Changer Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc.

Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E_DISC</strong></td>
<td>FOCUS Error</td>
<td>Press the magazine EJECT button and pull it out. Check for an error message, and insert the magazine again. If the message does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, see your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No CD in the CD magazine</td>
<td>Insert a CD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E_ERR</strong></td>
<td>Mechanical Error</td>
<td>Press the magazine EJECT button and pull it out. Check for an error message and insert the magazine again. If the message does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, see your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E_HOT</strong></td>
<td>High Temperature</td>
<td>This message should disappear when the temperature returns to normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E_EJEC</strong></td>
<td>No CD magazine in the CD changer.</td>
<td>Insert the CD magazine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remote Audio Controls

On EX and EX-L models
Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The middle button adjusts the volume. Press the top or bottom of the button and hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The CH button has three functions, depending on whether you are listening to the radio, or playing a CD.

The MODE button changes the audio mode between FM1, FM2, AM, XM, CD, and DVD/AUX (if a disc is inserted).

If you are playing a CD, use the CH button to skip to the beginning of the next track. You will see the CD and track number in the display.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to go to the next preset station. You will see the number of the preset button in the display. To change bands, press the AM/FM button.
On EX and EX-L models
Your vehicle's audio system will disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code in the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from five-digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a card that lists your audio system code number and serial number. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from a dealer. To do this, you will need the system's serial number.

If your vehicle’s battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see “ENTER CODE” in the frequency display the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons (icons on vehicles with navigation system) to enter the code. The code is on the radio code card included in your owner’s manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the sequence, then enter the correct code. You have ten tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in ten attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

You will have to store your favorite stations in the preset buttons after the system begins working. Your original settings were lost when the power was disconnected.
Setting the Clock

LX models

EX and EX-L models

140
You can quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing and holding the clock button, then pressing the RESET (preset 6) button sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, the clock sets forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example: 1:06 will reset to 1:00
1:52 will reset to 2:00

EX and EX-L models
The display shows the time when the ignition is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Press and hold the SET (TUNE) button until the numbers flash. Change the hours by pressing the H (−) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing the M (+) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. When you are finished, press the SET button again.

On models with Navigation System
Refer to the navigation system manual for how to adjust the time.

LX models
Press and hold the CLOCK (SCAN/RPT) button. Change the hours by pressing the H (preset 4) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing the M (preset 5) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. When you are finished, release the CLOCK button.

EX and EX-L models
The display shows the time when the ignition is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Press and hold the SET (TUNE) button until the numbers flash. Change the hours by pressing the H (−) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing the M (+) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. When you are finished, press the SET button again.
Rear Entertainment System

EX-L models

- ReAR ICON
- ReAR Control off ICON
- ReAR Speaker off ICON
- DVD/AUX button
- RePeat button
- reAR Power button
- ReARCTRL Knob
- ReAR CTRL Knob
- Play button
- Pauses button
- SeEk/Skip bar
- RANDom button
Your vehicle is equipped with a rear entertainment system that includes a DVD player for the enjoyment of the rear passengers.

With this system, the rear passengers can enjoy a different entertainment source (AM/FM radio, XM radio, CD changer, or DVD player) than the front seat occupants. The audio is broadcast through the supplied wireless headphones.

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position to operate the rear entertainment system.

To Turn On the System
Press the REAR PWR button. To turn on the rear controls (ceiling panel/remote control), press the RR CTRL knob. The system’s icon shows in the upper display. Your passengers can then operate the rear system with the control panel in the ceiling. The rear control panel can be used as a remote control when it is detached from the ceiling unit. Press the RR CTRL knob again to turn the rear controls off. You will see the Rear Controls Off icon in the upper display.

The rear system selects the source it was last set to. If that source has been removed (the DVD has been ejected from the player, for example), you will see “DVD EJECT” in the display. You must select another source.

Rear Speakers
When you turn on the system, the rear speakers are automatically turned off if the rear system selects a different entertainment source than the front system. You will see the Rear Speakers Off icon in the upper display. The sound for the rear system is sent to the wireless headphones.

If you want to turn the rear speakers on again, press and hold the REAR PWR button until the Rear Speakers Off icon goes off.

NOTE: The rear speakers are connected to the front system, so they will always play the source that the front system is set to.
Rear Entertainment System

To Select Rear Entertainment from the Front Control Panel
To operate the rear entertainment system from the front panel, turn the RR CTRL knob clockwise. The amber RR LED comes on to show that the control panel is enabled.

To play the radio, the buttons for the front entertainment system have the same functions.

If a CD is loaded in the main CD player or CD changer, select CD/CHG. If the CD is loaded in the lower player, select DVD/AUX.

Operating the DVD Player from the Front Control Panel
The DVD player in your rear entertainment system can play DVD video discs and CDs. It features Dolby" noise reduction.

* Dolby noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. “DOLBY” and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Open the overhead screen by pushing the OPEN button. The screen will swing down part-way. Pivot the screen the rest of the way. If you pivot the screen too far forward, past the second detent, the display will turn off. Pivot the screen back to the second or first detent to turn the display back on. To close the screen, pivot it up until it latches.
Turn the Rear CTRL knob clockwise. The amber Rear LED comes on to show that the control panel is now enabled.

Insert a DVD into the DVD/CD player below the front panel.

Push the DVD in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.

**PLAY** — Press the PLAY button if the DVD does not start playing automatically.

**PAUSE** — Press the PAUSE button to pause the DVD. Press the button again or press PLAY to resume. Pause works only with the DVD player.

CONTINUED
Rear Entertainment System

**SEEK/SKIP** — Press and hold the + button to move forward; you will see “CUE” in the display. Press and hold the − button to move backward; you will see “REV” in the display. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press and release the + button of the SEEK/SKIP, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track or chapter. Press and release the − button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track or chapter. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track or chapter.

**EJECT** — Press the eject button to remove the DVD from the drive.

To return front panel control to the front audio system, turn the REAR CTRL knob counterclockwise.

**Using the Rear Control Panel**
To turn on the rear entertainment system from the rear control panel, press the PWR button. Use the AM/FM button, XM button (U.S. models), CD button, DVD/AUX button (U.S. models), or AUX button (Canadian models) to select the entertainment source. The selected source will be shown in the display. Make sure the rear control operation has not been disabled with the REAR CTRL knob on the front panel.
Rear Entertainment System

To Play the Radio from the Rear Control Panel
Use the ▲ and ▼ buttons to select a station from the preset buttons. Press the ▲ button to tune the radio to a higher frequency, or press the ▼ button to tune to a lower frequency. Pressing the ► or ◄ button causes the system to search up or down the band for a station with a strong signal. You will see SEEK in the display.

To Play the XM Radio from the Rear Control Panel
Use the ▲ and ▼ buttons to select a station from the preset buttons. Press the ► button to search up the channels in the channel mode. The system will search up the channels within the category when the radio is in the category mode. Press the ◄ button to search down the channels in the channel mode. The system will search down the channels within the category when the radio is in the category mode.

CONTINUED
Rear Entertainment System

Press the ▶ or ◄ button to select another category.

Pressing and holding the DISP button for more than 5 seconds will change the search mode between Channel Search and Category Search. Each time you press and release the DISP button, the display above the rear control panel changes in the following sequence: Channel Number, Category Name, Music Name, Artist Name, Channel Name, and back to Channel Number.

To Play a CD from the Rear Control Panel
If CDs are loaded in the CD changer, select them by pressing the CD button. If a CD is loaded in the DVD player, press the DVD/AUX button. Press the ▶ button to skip to the beginning of the next track. Press the ◄ button to return to the beginning of the current track.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the ▶ or ◄ button. The system will continue to move through the track. Press the ▶ button to move forward, or the ◄ button to move backward. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

If CDs are loaded in the CD changer and the overhead screen is not open, pressing the ▲ or ▼ button changes the discs.
To Play a DVD from the Rear Control Panel
The video screen is for use by rear seat passengers only. The driver and front seat passenger should not try to view the screen while driving.

Open the overhead screen by pushing the OPEN button. The screen will swing down part-way. Pivot the screen the rest of the way. If you pivot the screen too far forward, past the second detent, the display will turn off. Pivot the screen back to the second or first detent to turn the display back on. To close the screen, pivot it up until it latches.

Press the ▶ button when you want to pause the DVD. Press this button again to go back to PLAY.

Press the ▶ button to skip to the beginning of the next chapter. Press the ▼ button to return to the beginning of the current chapter.

To move rapidly within a chapter, press and hold the ▶ or ▼ button. The system will continue to move through the chapter. Press the ▶ button to move forward, or the ▼ button to move backward. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

To select the menu on the DVD, press the MENU/SCROLL button (U.S. models) or MENU button (Canadian models). Use the ▲, ▼, ◀, and ▶ buttons to move to the desired menu selection, then press the ENT button to enter your selection.
When you press the DISP button while a DVD is playing, the title, chapter, elapsed time, and personal surround logo are displayed (STATUS 1).

When you press the DISP button again, the subtitle, audio, angle, sound characteristics, and personal surround logo are displayed (STATUS 2).

To go back to play, press the DISP button.
When you press the SETUP button while a DVD is playing, the DVD's setup menu is displayed at the bottom of the screen. You can then change various settings of play mode, personal surround, and display. To go back to play without changing any setting, press the RETURN or SETUP button, or select “Close” by pressing the or button, then press the ENT button.

When you select “Play Mode” by pressing the or button, the play mode setup menu is displayed above the “Play Mode” icon.

CONTINUED
Rear Entertainment System

Top Menu

When you select “TOP MENU” using the ▼ or ▲ button, the DVD’s title menu is displayed. This menu is also displayed when you press the MENU button while a DVD is not playing.

To go back to play, press the return button.

Audio

When you select “Audio” from the play mode setup menu by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, you will see a submenu of the dubbed language.

Select the desired language by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. The sound characteristics (Dolby Digital, LPCM, MPEG Audio, dts) recorded with the selected language are also displayed next to the language.

The selectable languages vary from DVD to DVD, and this feature may not be available on some DVDs.

Press the RETURN or ENT button to go back to the play mode setup menu.
Subtitle

To turn the subtitle on and off, select “Subtitle” from the setup menu by pressing the \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) button. You will see submenu “OFF” or “ON.” Select “OFF” or “ON” by pressing the \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) button.

If more than one subtitle language is available, you will see the language currently selected when you select “ON” in the previous step. Select the desired subtitle language by pressing the \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) button. Press the RETURN or ENT button to go back to the play mode setup menu.

Angle

On some DVDs, the scenes are recorded by more than one camera, giving different viewpoints of the same scene. To change the angle, select “Angle” from the setup menu. You will see a submenu if there are different angles available. Select the number on the submenu by pressing the \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) button. Press the RETURN or ENT button to go back to the play mode setup menu.
Search

When you select “Search” from the play mode setup menu, you will see the submenu shown above. In the left submenu, you can select between “Title” and “Chapter.” The right submenu displays the current title or chapter number and the total number of titles or chapters.

To do a title search, select “Title” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. Change the number on the right submenu by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and press the ENT button to begin the title search. If you press the RETURN button, the display returns to the play mode setup menu without doing the search.

To do a chapter search, select “Chapter” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. Change the number on the right submenu by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and press the ENT button to begin the chapter search. If you press the RETURN button, the display returns to the play mode setup menu without doing the search.
A numerical command can be issued to a DVD by inputting a two digit number, and a button number can be selected on the screen.

Select the “Num Input” from the play mode setup menu. The screen will change as shown above. If you select the “Move Key” using the ◀, ▲, ▼, or ▶ button, and press the ENT button, the Num Input display on the screen will change from the left side to right side or right to left.

Select the first digit number using the ◀, ▲, ▼, or ▶ button, and enter it by pressing the ENT button. If you want to change the number, select “DEL,” and press the ENT button, then select and enter the new number.

Select and enter the second digit number the same way. The cursor will automatically move to the “ENT” icon when you press the ENT button. Press the ENT button to enter the number command. To go back to the DVD screen, press the RETURN button.
When you select "PERSONAL SURROUND" by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, the personal surround setup menu is displayed above the "PERSONAL SURROUND" icon.

Selecting one of the sound effects, Cinema, Music, or Voice, from the personal surround menu allows you to change the sound in your headphones to match the disc you are playing.

Selecting "Cinema," "Music," or "Voice" by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and enter your selection by pressing the ENT button. The "PERSONAL SURROUND" logo is displayed in the upper right corner of the screen.

If you select "Off," the logo disappears, and there will be no special sound effect.

When you select "PERSONAL SURROUND" by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, the personal surround setup menu is displayed above the "PERSONAL SURROUND" icon.

Selecting one of the sound effects, Cinema, Music, or Voice, from the personal surround menu allows you to change the sound in your headphones to match the disc you are playing.

To adjust the display, select "Display" by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and enter your selection by pressing the ENT button. The display changes as shown above. You can adjust these display settings:

- Back Light
- Contrast
- Brightness
- Tint
- Color
Select the quality you want to adjust by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and then pressing the ENT button. The adjustment bar is displayed next to the selected item. Adjust the setting by pressing the ▶ or ◀ button. When you are finished with your adjustment, press the ENT button.

If you want to set the display to the default setting, select “Reset” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and then pressing the ENT button.

The display changes as shown above. Select “Yes,” and press the ENT button. You will see the message “Default display settings applied” on the display for 5 seconds.
Rear Entertainment System

Screen Mode
You can set the screen mode to these settings:

- Normal
- Wide
- Zoom
- Full
Select the “Aspect Ratio” by pressing the ▶ or ◄ button, then press the ENT button.

The selectable setting menu is displayed, and the current setting is highlighted in blue.

Select the desired setting by pressing the ◄ or ▶ button, then press the ENT button.

The selected setting will be highlighted in blue for one second, and the screen returns to the play mode in the selected setting.
When you press the SETUP button on the rear control panel when a DVD is not playing, the “INITIAL SETTINGS” menu is displayed.

When you select “Language” with the ◄ or ► button, the menu shown above appears.

To return to the stop or prestop screen, select “Close” using the ◄ or ► button, and then press the ENT, or the SETUP button.

To select the language used in the DISC menus, select “Menu Lang” by pressing the ◄ or ► button. You will see the submenu next to “Menu Lang.”
Select the desired language by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and then pressing the ENT button.

The selectable languages are, English, French, Spanish, German, Italian, Dutch, and Japanese.

If you want another language than those listed, you need to enter the code number of the desired language. Select “other,” and press the ENT button. The display changes as shown in the next column.

If you select “No,” and press the ENT button, the display returns to the initial screen of the “Language” menu.
If you select “Yes,” the display changes to the language code input mode. Select the first number using the \( \downarrow \), \( \uparrow \), \( \rightarrow \), or \( \leftarrow \) button, and press the ENT button to enter it. Repeat this until all four numbers are entered. When the fourth number is entered, the cursor automatically moves to “ENT” on the display. Press the ENT button on the control panel to enter the new language code.

If you made a mistake entering a number, select “DEL” on the display with the \( \downarrow \), \( \uparrow \), \( \rightarrow \), or \( \leftarrow \) button, and press the ENT button on the control panel. Then select and enter the correct number as described. The display returns to the initial “Language” menu screen.

You can select the dubbed language before playing DVDs. Select “Audio Lang” by pressing the \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) button. You will see the submenu next to “Audio Lang.” Follow the same instructions you used to set the menu language.
Subtitle Language

You can select the subtitle language before playing DVDs. Select “Subtitle Lang” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. You will see the submenu next to the “Subtitle Lang.”

Follow the same instructions you used to set the menu language.

INITIAL SETTINGS (Others)

When you select “Others” at the bottom of the “INITIAL SETTINGS” screen, the above menu appears on the screen.

Dynamic Range

“Dynamic Range” reduces the differences between the loud and quiet sound levels throughout the disc. When this is on, the louder sounds are lowered, and quieter sounds are increased.

CONTINUED
Rear Entertainment System

When you select the “Dynamic Range” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, you will see the submenu next to the “Dynamic Range” as shown above.

To turn “Dynamic Range” on or off, select “ON” or “OFF” by pressing the ► or ◄ button, and then press the ENT button.

When you switch to another angle while playing a DVD, the angle mark is displayed in the upper right corner of the screen.

You can set the system to display or not display this angle mark.

Select “Angle Mark” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. The above submenu appears. If you want the angle mark to be displayed, select “ON” with the ► or ◄ button, and then press the ENT button. The display returns to the “Others” menu.
Parental Control Level

You can place an auditory restriction by changing the parental control level. The higher the level number, the lower the restriction.

Select “Parental Level” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. You will see the submenu shown above. If you select “No,” and press the ENT button, the display returns to the “Others” menu.

When you select and enter “Yes,” the display changes as shown above. To change the level, you need to enter your four digit password. Select the number for the first digit by pressing the ▼, ▲, ►, or ◄ button, and enter it by pressing the ENT button. Repeat this until all four digits are filled. When you enter the fourth number, the cursor automatically moves to “ENT” on the display. Press the ENT button on the control panel.
If the system does not recognize the password you entered, you will see the above display. Repeat the parental control level steps until you enter the correct password.

If you enter the password correctly, you can then change the parental control level.

Once you correctly enter the password, press the ▼ or ▲ button to change the level, and then press the ENT button to enter your selection.

The password was set to “1111” when the vehicle left the factory.
To change the password, select “Password.” You will see the above menu displayed. Select “Yes” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, then press the ENT button.

If you select “No,” and press the ENT button, the display returns to the “Others” menu.

Select the first number by pressing the ▼, ▲, ▶, or ◀ button, and enter it by pressing the ENT button. Repeat this until all four numbers are entered. When you enter the fourth number, the cursor automatically moves to “ENT” on the display. Press the ENT button on the control panel.

If the system does not recognize the password you entered, you will see the above display. Repeat the password setting steps until you enter the correct password.

CONTINUED
If you forget the password, select “Password,” and press the ▲ button 10 times.

The display changes as shown above. If you want to use the default password (1111), select “Yes,” and press the ENT button.

The message “Default password setting applied” is displayed for 5 seconds.

Rear Entertainment System
If it takes several pushes on the button to operate the rear entertainment system, have your dealer replace the batteries as soon as possible.

Battery type: BR3032

The rear control panel can be detached from the ceiling unit and used as a remote control. To remove it from the ceiling unit, press the release button. The control panel will swing down partway. Pivot it down further past the detent until it detaches from the hinge. To reinstall it, reverse the procedure.

Remote Control

Replacing the Remote Control Batteries

As required by the FCC: This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
There are various types of DVDs available. Some of them are not compatible with your system. The DVD player in your Rear Entertainment System can play DVDs and CDs bearing the above marks on their packages or jackets. Those packages or jackets should also bear the designation of “1” or “ALL”. DVD-ROMs cannot be played in this system.

Playable DVDs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DVD</th>
<th>COMPACT DISC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DIGITAL AUDIO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Protecting DVDs

The tips on how to handle and protect DVDs are basically the same as those for compact discs. Refer to “Protecting Your CDs” on page 135.
DVD Player Error Messages

If you see an error message in the screen while operating the DVD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the message, take your vehicle to a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERROR F0</td>
<td>Eject the disc and reinsert it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERROR F2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid region code</td>
<td>Use a disc with the regional designation of “1” or “All”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid disc</td>
<td>The disc is not playable in this unit. Eject the disc, and insert a disc compatible with this system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parental control active.</td>
<td>Reinsert the disc, and increase the parental control level (see pages 165 and 166).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change level to view.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rear Entertainment System

Wireless Headphones

Some state and local government agencies prohibit the use of headphones by the driver of a motor vehicle. Always obey applicable laws and regulations.

The audio for the rear entertainment system is sent to the wireless headphones that come with the system. When using the headphones, make sure you wear them correctly: L (left) and R (right) are marked on the sides of the frame. The antennas are in the front of the earpieces. If you wear the headphones backwards, the antennas will be aimed away from the system, affecting the sound quality and range.

To use the headphones, pivot the earpieces outward. This turns them on. To adjust the volume, turn the dial on the bottom of the right earpiece. When you remove the headphones, the earpieces automatically pivot inward, and the headphones turn off. When not in use, store the headphones in the pocket of either front seat.

Replacing Batteries

Each headphone uses one AAA battery. The battery is under the cover on the left earpiece. To remove the cover, insert a coin in the slot and twist it slightly to pry the cover away from the earpiece. Pull the cover outward, and pivot it out of the way.
There are three headphone connectors for the third seat passengers. Each connector has its own volume control.

The system will accept auxiliary inputs from standard video games and video equipment.

V = Video jack
L = Left audio jack
R = Right audio jack

There are three headphone connectors for the third seat passengers. Each connector has its own volume control.

Auxiliary input jacks and headphone connectors for the rear entertainment system are on the back of the center console compartment.

Remove the battery. Install the new battery in the earpiece as shown in the diagram next to the battery slot. Slide the cover back into place on the earpiece, then press down on the back edge to lock it in place.
Security System

On EX and EX-L models

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, and taillights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle. This alarm continues for 2 minutes, then the system resets. To reset an alarm system before the 2 minutes have elapsed, unlock the driver’s front door with the key or the remote transmitter.

The security system automatically sets 15 seconds after you lock the doors, hood, and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors from the outside with the key, lock tab, door lock switch, or remote transmitter. The security system indicator next to the driver’s door lock starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the tailgate, or the hood without using the key or the remote transmitter, will cause it to alarm. It also alarms if the radio is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

The security system will not set if the hood, the tailgate, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the Door and Tailgate Open Monitor on the instrument panel (see page 66) to see if the doors and the tailgate are fully closed. Since it is not part of the monitor display, manually check the hood.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

**WARNING**

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

### Using the Cruise Control

1. Push in the cruise control master button. The indicator on the instrument panel will come on.

2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.
Cruise Control

Changing the Set Speed
You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase the speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will speed up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Tap the brake pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

Even with the cruise control turned on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake pedal causes cruise control to cancel.

Canceling Cruise Control
You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the cruise control master button.

Resuming the Set Speed
When you push the CANCEL button or tap on the brake pedal, the system will remember the previously set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h) and then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on. The vehicle will accelerate to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the cruise control master button turns the system off and erases the previous cruising speed.
Compass Function

If equipped
Your vehicle has a compass in the rear view mirror. The compass indicates the vehicle direction with illuminated letters; N (north), S (south), W (west), and E (east). The center blue icon in the compass is always on. It serves as a reference point.

The direction and center position icons come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. The system then begins to check the vehicle direction and illuminates the appropriate icon(s).

To turn the compass on or off, press the compass button on the back of the rear view mirror.

The compass can be affected by driving near power lines or stations, across bridges, through tunnels, over railroad crossings, past large vehicles, or driving near large objects that cause magnetic interference. It can also be affected by accessories such as antennas and roof racks that are mounted by magnets.

The compass mirror has a light sensor behind the right side of the rear view mirror. Make sure the extended sun visor or an accessory is not covering the sensor.
Compass Calibration
The compass may need to be manually calibrated after exposure to a strong magnetic field. If the compass seems to continually show the wrong direction, do this.

NOTE: Do this procedure in an open area, away from buildings, power lines, and other vehicles.

1. With the blue center icon displayed, press and hold the compass button for about 6 seconds. When the center icon turns red, release the button.

2. Drive the vehicle slowly in circles at less than 5 mph (8 km/h) until the center icon turns blue. This icon also turns blue by continuing to drive the vehicle under normal driving conditions. When you see an actual heading on the compass, calibration is completed.

3. The blue direction icon(s) blink and show the current zone.

4. If the zone is incorrect, press and release the compass button repeatedly to get to the correct number.

5. The compass will return to the normal display about 4 seconds after you stop adjusting a zone number.

Compass Zone Selection
In most areas, there is a variation between magnetic north and true north. Zone selection is required so the compass can compensate for this variation. To check and select the zone, do this:

1. Find the zone for your area on the zone map (see page 179). Each zone number (1 through 15) corresponds to a compass zone on the table (see page 179).

2. Press and hold the compass button for about 3 seconds. When all of the direction icons begin to blink, release the button.
Compass Features

Zone Map Compass Display for Each Zone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zone</th>
<th>Compass Display for Each Zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rearview Camera and Monitor

When in reverse, the touch screen and navigation system “hard” buttons are locked out, except the “ZOOM” button. Touching the “▼” or “▲” button allows you to adjust the brightness of the rearview camera image.

**NOTICE**

The camera brightness cannot be adjusted by voice control.

Since the rearview camera display area is limited, you should always back up slowly and carefully, and look behind you for obstacles.

Whenever you shift to R (reverse) with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the rear view is shown on the navigation or Compass system screen.

For the best picture, always keep the rearview camera clean, and do not cover the camera lens. To avoid scratching the lens when you clean it, use a moist, soft cloth.
If equipped

The HomeLink® universal transceiver built into your vehicle can be programmed to operate up to three remotely controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

General Information

If you are training HomeLink to operate a garage door or gate, you should unplug the motor for that device during training. Repeatedly pressing the remote control button could burn out the motor.

HomeLink stores the code in a permanent memory. There should be no need to retrain HomeLink if your vehicle’s battery goes dead or is disconnected.

If your garage door opener was manufactured before April 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. They do not have the safety feature that causes the motor to stop and reverse if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury.

Important Safety Precautions

Always refer to the opening instructions and safety information that came with your garage door opener or other equipment you intend to operate with HomeLink. If you do not have this information, contact the manufacturer of the equipment.

For quick and accurate training, make sure the remote transmitter for the device (garage door, automatic gate, security system, etc.) has a fresh battery.

Training HomeLink

Before you begin — If you just received your vehicle and have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes before training the first button. To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons on the HomeLink transceiver for about 25 seconds, until the red indicator flashes. Release the buttons, then proceed to step 1.

If you are training the second or third buttons, go directly to step 1.

1. Unplug the garage door opener motor from the electrical outlet.

2. Hold the end of the garage door opener remote transmitter 2 to 5 inches from HomeLink. Make sure you are not blocking your view of the red indicator in HomeLink.
3. Press and hold the remote transmitter button and one of the HomeLink buttons at the same time.

- If the red indicator in HomeLink begins to flash slowly at first, then rapidly, release both buttons, and go to step 5.

4. Press and hold the remote transmitter button and one of the HomeLink buttons at the same time. While continuing to hold the HomeLink button, press and release the remote transmitter button every 2 seconds.

- If the red indicator in HomeLink begins to flash slowly at first, then rapidly, release both buttons, and go to step 5.
- If the red indicator in HomeLink continues to flash slowly (does not begin to flash rapidly), repeat steps 2 thru 4.

5. Plug in the garage door opener motor, then test the HomeLink button by pushing it for about 1 second.

- If the button works, programming is complete.
- If the button does not work go to step 6.

6. Push and hold the HomeLink button for a few seconds, then watch the red indicator on HomeLink.

- If the indicator stays on or flashes slowly, repeat steps 2 thru 5.
- If the indicator flashes rapidly for 2 seconds then stays on, you have a rolling code transmitter: go to “Training with a Rolling Code System” (see page 183).

7. Repeat these steps to train the other two HomeLink buttons to operate any other compatible remotely controlled device around your home (lighting, automatic gate, security system, etc.).
Training With a Rolling Code System
For security purposes, newer garage door opening systems use a “rolling” or variable code. Information from the remote control and the garage door opener are needed before HomeLink can operate the garage door opener.

The “Training HomeLink” procedure trains HomeLink to the proper garage door opener code. The following procedure synchronizes HomeLink to the garage door opener so it sends and receives the correct codes.

1. Make sure you have properly completed the “Training HomeLink” procedure.

2. Find the “training” button on your garage door opener unit. The location will vary, depending on the manufacturer.

3. Press the training button on the garage door opener unit until the indicator next to the button comes on. The indicator may blink, or come on and stay on. You then have approximately 30 seconds to complete the following steps.

4. Press and hold the button on HomeLink for 3 to 4 seconds.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again for 3 to 4 seconds. This should turn off the training indicator on the garage door opener unit. (Some systems may require you to press the button up to three times.)

6. Press the HomeLink button again for about 1 second. It should operate the garage door.
HomeLink Universal Transceiver

Erasing Codes
To erase the codes stored in all three buttons, press and hold the two outside buttons until the red indicator begins to flash, then release the buttons.

You should erase all three codes before selling the vehicle.

Retraining a Button
If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the HomeLink button to be trained until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly.
   - If a rolling code transmitter was previously programmed, the indicator will flash rapidly for 2 seconds, and then stay on for about 23 seconds.
   - If a standard transmitter was programmed, the indicator will stay on for about 25 seconds.
2. Once the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly, continue to hold the HomeLink button, and follow steps 3 thru 6 under “Training HomeLink” (see page 181).

Customer Assistance
If you have problems with training the HomeLink Universal Transceiver, or would like information on home products that can be operated by HomeLink, call (800) 355-3515. On the Internet, go to www.homelink.com.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what gasoline to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period ...................... 186
Fuel Recommendation ............. 186
Service Station Procedures ...... 187
Refueling .............................. 187
Opening and Closing the Hood ........................................ 188
Oil Check .................................. 189
Engine Coolant Check .......... 190
Fuel Economy ............................. 190
Accessories and Modifications .... 191
Carrying Cargo .......................... 193
Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

Break-in Period
Help assure your vehicle’s future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not tow a trailer.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

Fuel Recommendation
Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number of 87 or higher. Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic rapping noise that can lead to engine damage.

We recommend using quality gasolines containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits.

In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend, in areas where it is available, the use of gasoline that does NOT contain manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT. Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact your authorized dealer for service.

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 15% MTBE by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol.

If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

Premium fuel is recommended when towing in certain conditions (see page 220).

For further important fuel-related information, please refer to your Quick Start Guide.
Refueling

1. Park with the driver’s side closest to the service station pump.

2. Open the fuel fill door by pulling on the handle to the left of the driver’s seat.

3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank escapes. The fuel fill cap is attached to the fuel filler with a tether. Put the attachment on the fuel fill cap into the slit on the fuel fill door.

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to “top off” the tank. Leave some room for the fuel to expand with temperature changes. 

   If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with your vehicle’s fuel vapor recovery system. The system helps keep fuel vapor from going into the atmosphere. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult your dealer.

   **WARNING**

   Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

   • Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
   • Handle fuel only outdoors.
   • Wipe up spills immediately.

CONTINUED
Service Station Procedures

5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once. If you do not properly tighten the cap, the malfunction indicator lamp may come on (see page 277). You will also see a “CHECK FUEL CAP” message on the information display.

6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.

1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release handle located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.

2. Put your fingers under the front edge of the hood near the center. Slide your hand to the left until you feel the hood latch handle. Push this handle up to release it. Lift up the hood.

If the hood latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.
3. Holding the grip, pull the support rod out of its clip. Insert the end into the designated hole in the hood.

To close the hood, lift it up slightly to remove the support rod from the hole. Put the support rod back into its holding clip. Lower the hood to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then let it drop. Make sure it is securely latched.

Oil Check

Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).
2. Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.

4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 239.
Service Station Procedures, Fuel Economy

Engine Coolant Check

Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see Adding Engine Coolant on page 242 for information on adding the proper coolant.

Refer to Owner’s Maintenance Checks on page 234 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.

Improving Fuel Economy

- Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance messages displayed in the information display. See Owner’s Maintenance Checks on page 234.

  For example, an underinflated tire causes more “rolling resistance,” which uses more fuel.

  The build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle’s underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel mileage and reduces the chance of corrosion.

- Drive moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.

- Always drive in the highest gear possible.

- Try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your vehicle uses extra fuel. Use cruise control when appropriate.

- Combine several short trips into one.

- The air conditioning puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.
Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Honda accessories, can make it unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

Accessories
Your dealer has Honda accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle, and are covered by warranty.

Although non-Honda accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling and stability.

**WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Before installing any accessory:
- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 283) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows as these may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
Accessories and Modifications

Modifying Your Vehicle
Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Honda components could seriously affect your vehicle’s handling, stability, and reliability.

Here are some examples:

- Lowering your vehicle with a non-Honda suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.

- Raising your vehicle with a non-Honda suspension kit can affect the handling and stability.

- Non-Honda wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components and will not be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).

- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle’s anti-lock brakes and other systems.

- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle’s safety features can make the systems ineffective.

If you plan to modify your vehicle, consult your dealer.
Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Glove box
- Front door and seat-back pockets
- Rear cargo area, including the second and third row seats when folded flat
- Console compartment
- Rear compartment

However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle’s handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.
Carrying Cargo

Load Limits
The maximum load for your vehicle is 1,322 lbs (600 kg). This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

To determine the correct cargo and luggage load limit:

1. Locate the statement, “the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 1,322 lbs” on your vehicle’s placard. (The placard is driver’s doorjamb.)
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from 1,322 lbs (600 kg).
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the maximum load is 1,322 lbs and there will be eight 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 122 lbs. 
   \[1,322 - 750 \times 8 = 122 \text{ lbs.}\]
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle (see page 213).

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) or the gross axle weight rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver’s doorjamb.

WARNING
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.
Carrying Cargo

Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment
- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the proper operation of the seats, or proper operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you fold the second or third row seats down, tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop. Also, keep all cargo below the bottom of the windows. If it is higher, it could interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Carrying Cargo in the Cargo Area
- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the cargo area, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible. Tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the tailgate, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of carbon monoxide poisoning, follow the instructions on page 57.
- If you carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed 165 lbs (75 kg).

If you use an accessory roof rack, the roof rack weight limit may be lower. Refer to the information that came with your roof rack.

Optional Separation Net
The separation net can be used to hold back soft, lightweight items stored in the cargo area. Heavy items should be properly secured on the floor of the cargo area. The net may not prevent heavy items from being thrown forward in a crash or a sudden stop.

Optional Cargo Cover
The cargo cover can be used to cover the cargo area behind the third row seats. When the third row seats are folded down, the cargo cover can be extended over the larger area. Do not install the cover over the larger area if the third row seats are not folded down.

Before Driving
Carrying Cargo

The hooks on each side of the tailgate and on the underside of the cargo area storage compartment lid are for plastic grocery bags. To use the hook on the storage compartment lid, open the lid, and attach the cord to one of the shafts of the third seat center head restraint.

You can use the cargo net to secure items in the cargo area, and store small items between the two halves of the net. To install the cargo net, hook the loops on the four corners of the net to the tabs at both sides of the tailgate sill.
This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the automatic transmission. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the VTM-4 system (4WD models only), the VSA system, the tire pressure monitoring system, and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.
Driving Guidelines

Your vehicle has a higher ground clearance that allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

Because your vehicle rides higher off the ground, it has a high center of gravity that can cause it to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll over rate than other types of vehicles.

To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

• Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.

• Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.

• Do not modify your vehicle in any way that would raise the center of gravity.

• Do not carry heavy cargo on the roof.

Four-wheel drive models
Your vehicle is equipped with a four-wheel drive (4WD) system. When the system senses a loss of front-wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This gives you better traction and mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two-wheel drive vehicle.

Preparing to Drive
You should do the following checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.

2. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure (see page 258).

3. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

4. Check the seat adjustment (see page 87).

5. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 92).
Driving Guidelines, Starting the Engine

6. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 78).

7. Make sure the doors and the tailgate are securely closed and locked.

8. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 15).

9. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel (see page 61).

Starting the Engine

1. Apply the parking brake.

2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.

3. Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.

4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. Do not hold the key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds at a time. If the engine does not start right away, pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.

5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed halfway down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.

6. If the engine fails to start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down, and hold it there while starting to clear flooding. If the engine still does not start, return to step 5.

**NOTICE**

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine’s fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 79.

In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.
If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

Shift Lever Position Indicators

These indicators on the instrument panel show which position the shift lever is in.

The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

Shifting

To shift from Park to any position, press firmly on the brake pedal, and pull the shift lever toward you. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position.
Automatic Transmission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To shift from:</th>
<th>Do this:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P to R</td>
<td>Press the brake pedal and pull the shift lever towards you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R to P</td>
<td>Pull the shift lever towards you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N to R</td>
<td>Pull the shift lever towards you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D₁ to 2</td>
<td>Move the shift lever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 to 1</td>
<td>Move the shift lever.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Park (P) — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Pull the shift lever towards you, then move it out of Park.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see Shift Lock Release on page 203.

To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

Reverse (R) — Press the brake pedal and pull the shift lever towards you to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop and then shift.

Neutral (N) — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

Drive (D) — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically selects a suitable gear for the vehicle speed and acceleration. You may notice the transmission shifting up at higher speeds when the engine is cold. This helps the engine warm up faster.

CONTINUED

201
## Automatic Transmission

### Drive (D3) —
This position is similar to D, except only the first three gears are selected. Use D3 to provide engine braking when going down a steep hill. D3 can also keep the transmission from cycling between third and fourth gears in stop-and-go driving.

### Second (2) —
This position locks the transmission in second gear. It does not downshift to first gear when you come to a stop.

Use second gear:
- For more power when climbing.
- To increase engine braking when going down steep hills.
- For starting out on a slippery surface or in deep snow.
- To help reduce wheel spin.
- When driving downhill with a trailer.

### First (1) —
This position locks the transmission in first gear. By upshifting and downshifting through 1, 2, D3, and D, you can operate the transmission much like a manual transmission without a clutch pedal.

### Engine Speed Limiter
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer’s red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine’s computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.
Shift Lock Release
Do this if pushing on the brake pedal and pulling the shift lever does not shift the transmission out of Park:

1. Set the parking brake.

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover. Using a small flat-tipped screwdriver or a metal fingernail file, carefully pry on the edge of the cover to remove it.

4. Insert the key in the shift lock release slot.

5. Push down on the key while you pull the shift lever towards you and move it out of Park to neutral.

6. Remove the key from the shift lock release slot, then install the cover. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.
VTM-4 System

The variable torque management 4WD (VTM-4) system automatically transfers varying amounts of engine torque to the rear wheels under lower traction conditions.

If more traction is needed when your vehicle is stuck, or is likely to become stuck, you can use the VTM-4 LOCK button to increase torque to the rear wheels.

To Engage the VTM-4 Lock
1. The vehicle must be stopped with the engine running.
2. Move the shift lever to first (1), second (2), or reverse (R) gear.
3. Press the VTM-4 LOCK button. The indicator in the button comes on.

To get unstuck, apply light pressure to the accelerator pedal. Do not spin the front tires for more than a few seconds. Because of the amount of torque applied to the rear tires, they should not spin. This is normal. If you are not able to move the vehicle, stop and reverse direction.

To Disengage the VTM-4 Lock, do any of the following:
• Press the VTM-4 LOCK button.
• Move the shift lever to D or D3.
• Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

The VTM-4 Lock will temporarily disengage when the vehicle speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h). The indicator in the button will remain on.

**NOTICE**
Do not continuously spin the front tires of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tires can cause transmission or rear differential damage.
Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start the engine and monitors the pressure in your tires while driving.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure indicator and the appropriate tire on the tire pressure monitor to come on.

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicator is on, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle’s tire information placard.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when cold and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified in the vehicle placard and this owner’s manual (see page 289).

Although your tire pressure is monitored, you must manually check the tire pressures monthly.

If you think you can safely drive a short distance to a service station, proceed slowly, and inflate the tire to the recommended pressure shown on the driver’s doorjamb.

If the tire is flat, or if the tire pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tire with the compact spare tire.
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitor

The appropriate tire indicator and low tire pressure indicator comes on if a tire becomes significantly underinflated. See Low Tire Pressure Indicator on page 205.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Indicator

This indicator comes on and stays on if there is a problem with the tire pressure monitoring system.

If you see this message, the system is off and is not monitoring the tire pressures. Have the system checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

Changing a Tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low tire pressure and tire monitor indicators will come on. Replace the indicated flat tire with the compact spare tire (see page 206).

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by your dealer or qualified technician.

After you replace the flat tire, the low tire pressure indicator stays on. This is normal; the system is not monitoring the spare tire pressure. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure it is correct.

Never use a puncture-repairing agent in a flat tire. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor. Have the flat tire repaired by your dealer as soon as possible.

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly or your vehicle may roll if it is on an incline.

Set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

- Make sure the moonroof (if equipped) and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc. in the cargo area or take them with you.
- Lock the doors.

*On vehicles with security system*
Check the indicator on the driver’s door to verify that the security system is set.

- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.

- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb and set the parking brake.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb and set the parking brake.
Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious in your driving.

Braking System Design
The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.
If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the brakes from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The ABS also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

ABS Indicator
If this indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the front-to-rear braking distribution system may also be shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 278. If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

Important Safety Reminders
ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during braking.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.
The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine’s output, and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle’s driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle’s entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

VSA Activation Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink.

VSA System Indicator

If the VSA system indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays, or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible (see page 64).

Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA Off Switch
In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.

This switch is under the left vent. Press it to turn the vehicle stability assist system on and off.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

VSA and Tire Sizes
Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tires (see page 258).

Deactivate the VSA system if you need to drive with the compact spare tire installed (see page 266).

If you install winter tires, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.
Your vehicle has been designed to tow a trailer, as well as carrying passengers and their cargo. To safely tow a trailer, you should carefully observe the load limits (see page 194), use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

Be sure to read the Off-Highway Driving Guidelines section on page 222 if you plan to tow off paved surfaces.

**WARNING**

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

**Total Trailer Weight:** The maximum weight of the trailer and everything in or on it depends on the number of occupants in your vehicle and the type of trailer being towed (see page 215).

Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle’s handling and performance.

**Tongue Load:** The weight that the tongue of a fully loaded trailer puts on the hitch should be 5 to 10 percent of the total trailer weight for boat trailers, and 8 to 15 percent of total trailer weight for all other trailers. (See page 215 for limits for your towing situation). Too much tongue load reduces front-tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
Towing a Trailer

**Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)** — The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all cargo and the tongue load is 5,950 lbs (2,700 kg).

**Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR)** — The maximum allowable weight on the vehicle axles is 2,865 lbs (1,300 kg) on the front axle, and 3,155 lbs (1,430 kg) on the rear axle.

**Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR)** — The maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle and trailer is 9,700 lbs (4,400 kg) with the proper hitch and fluid coolers (see page 217).

The GCWR must be reduced 2 percent for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

---

**Estimating Loads**

The best way to confirm that all loads are within limits is to check them at a public scale. For public scales in your area, check your local phone book, or contact your trailer dealer or rental agency for assistance.

To help ensure a safe drive to a scale, or if you cannot get to a public scale, we recommend that you estimate your total trailer weight and tongue load as described.

**To Estimate the Total Trailer Weight**

Add the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer) with everything in or on the trailer. Then check the tables on page 215 to make sure you do not exceed the limit for your conditions.

**To Estimate the Tongue Load**

1. Park the vehicle on level ground.
2. Measure from the ground to the bottom of the trailer hitch.
3. Connect the fully loaded trailer to the hitch.
4. Measure again from the ground to the same spot on the bottom of the hitch.
5. Subtract the second measurement from the first measurement, then refer to the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the difference is:</th>
<th>Estimated tongue load is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 ½”</td>
<td>150 lbs (68 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ¼”</td>
<td>250 lbs (114 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3”</td>
<td>350 lbs (160 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ¼”</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the difference is more than 3 ¾ inch, you have too much load on the tongue. Redistribute the load or remove cargo as needed.
## Towing a Trailer

### Total Trailer Weight and Tongue Load Limits:

#### BOAT TRAILERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Occupants</th>
<th>Maximum Total Trailer Weight</th>
<th>Maximum Tongue Load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4,500 lbs (2,045 kg)</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4,500 lbs (2,045 kg)</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4,500 lbs (2,045 kg)</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>4,300 lbs (1,945 kg)</td>
<td>350 lbs (160 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4,100 lbs (1,855 kg)</td>
<td>220 lbs (100 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>2,000 lbs (905 kg)</td>
<td>100 lbs (45 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Towing is Not Recommended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### OTHER TYPES OF TRAILERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Occupants</th>
<th>Maximum Total Trailer Weight</th>
<th>Maximum Tongue Load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3,500 lbs (1,590 kg)</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3,500 lbs (1,590 kg)</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3,300 lbs (1,490 kg)</td>
<td>450 lbs (205 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3,100 lbs (1,400 kg)</td>
<td>350 lbs (160 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2,700 lbs (1,220 kg)</td>
<td>220 lbs (100 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1,200 lbs (540 kg)</td>
<td>100 lbs (45 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Towing is Not Recommended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The corresponding weight limits assume occupants fill seats from the front of the vehicle to the back, each occupant weighs 150 lbs (70 kg) and each has 15 lbs (7 kg) of luggage in the cargo area.
Towing a Trailer

**Checking Loads**
To accurately check your loads at the public scale, the vehicle and trailer should be fully loaded, and all occupants should stay in the vehicle while the attendant watches the scale.

1. Check the front gross axle weight. Limit: 2,865 lbs (1,300 kg)
2. Check the gross vehicle weight. Limit: 5,950 lbs (2,700 kg)
3. If you cannot weigh the rear axle directly, you can calculate the rear gross axle weight by subtracting the weight in step 1 from the weight in step 2. Limit: 3,086 lbs (1,400 kg)
4. Check the gross combined weight. Limit: 9,700 lbs (4,400 kg)
   Remember, maximum gross combined weight should be decreased 2% for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.
5. Check the weight of the hitched trailer. Write this number down.
6. Check the weight of the unhitched trailer. Limit: See page 215.

7. Calculate the tongue load.
   Subtract the weight in Step 5 from the weight in step 6.
   Limit: See page 215.
   Range: 5-10% of total trailer weight for boat trailers
   8-15% of total trailer weight for other trailers

---

**Towing Equipment and Accessories**

Towing generally requires a variety of supplemental equipment. To ensure the best quality, we recommend that you purchase Honda equipment whenever possible.

Your dealer offers a trailer package that includes a hitch, a ball mount, a wiring harness, a heavy-duty transmission fluid cooler, and a heavy-duty power steering fluid cooler.

Discuss any additional needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and make sure all equipment is properly installed, maintained, and also meets state, federal, province, and local regulations.

---

**Hitch**

We strongly recommend that you have your dealer install a Honda hitch. Using non-Honda equipment may result in serious damage to your vehicle.

**Transmission Fluid Cooler and Power Steering Fluid Cooler**

To help prevent overheating, a heavy-duty transmission fluid cooler and a heavy-duty power steering fluid cooler are required for trailer towing. These coolers are available only from your dealer.

**Weight Distributing Hitch**

A weight distributing hitch is not recommended for use with your vehicle, as an improperly adjusted weight distributing hitch may reduce handling, stability, and braking performance.

CONTINUED
Towing a Trailer

**Trailer Brakes**
Honda requires that any trailer with a total trailer weight of 1,000 lbs (455 kg) or more has its own brakes.

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet.

If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle’s hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle’s hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

See your trailer dealer or rental agency for more information on installing electric brakes.

**Safety Chains**
Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Make sure the chains are secured to the trailer and hitch, and that they cross under the tongue and can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

**Sway Control**
This device is recommended if your trailer tends to sway. Your trailer maker can tell you what kind of sway control you need and how to install it.

**Trailer Mirrors**
Many states and provinces require special exterior mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if they don’t, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

**Spare Tires**
When towing a trailer, we recommend that you carry a full-size spare wheel and tire for your vehicle and trailer. See page 258 for proper tire size, page 270 for how to store a full size wheel and tire, and page 267 for information on changing a flat tire.

Remember to unhitch the trailer before changing a flat. Ask your trailer sales or rental agency where and how to store the trailer’s spare tire.
To get to your vehicle's trailer lighting connector, open the tailgate, remove the cargo cover, then remove the rear panel trim. The connector is on the left side.

We recommend that you have your dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. This harness has been designed for your vehicle.

Since lighting and wiring vary with trailer type and brand, you should also have a qualified mechanic install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer.

Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle’s electrical system and affect your vehicle warranty.

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the tires, brakes, suspension, cooling system, and lights are in good operating condition.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits.
- The hitch, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items in or on the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.

CONTINUED
Trailer Driving Tips

- Your vehicle tires and spare are properly inflated, and the trailer tires and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

- Towing performance can be affected by high altitude, high temperature, or when climbing steep grades. Therefore, premium fuel (premium unleaded gasoline with pump octane number of 91 or higher) is recommended when towing more than 3,500 lbs (1,590 kg).

Driving Safely With a Trailer
The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving maneuvers before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines below.

**Break-In Period**
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km) (see page 186).

**Towing Speeds and Gears**
Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers. When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 55 mph (88 km/h). At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

To prevent the transmission from shifting frequently, drive in the D position.

**Making Turns and Braking**
Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

**Driving on Hills**
When climbing hills, closely watch your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

If the automatic transmission shifts frequently while going up a hill, shift to Ds.
When driving down hills, reduce your speed and shift down to D3. Do not “ride” the brakes. Remember, it takes longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission to overheat.

Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting
Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause trailer to sway. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed, and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

Backing Up
Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel; then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left, and turn the wheel right to move the trailer to the right.

Parking
Follow all normal precautions when parking, including putting the transmission in Park and firmly setting the parking brake. Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer’s tires.

Retrieving a Boat
If the vehicle’s tires slip when retrieving a boat from the water, shift to first gear, and turn on VTM-4 lock (see page 204). Disengage VTM-4 lock as soon as the boat is out of the water to prevent damage to the VTM-4 system.

Towing Your Vehicle
Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, see page 279.
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement. But its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads, such as campgrounds, picnic sites, and similar locations. It is not designed for trail-blazing, mountain climbing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills. Your vehicle will also handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Be sure to pay extra attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

**WARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause an accident or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner’s manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don’t drive faster than conditions permit.

**Important Safety Precautions**

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations.

- Be sure to store cargo properly, and do not exceed your vehicle cargo load limits (see pages 194 and 213).
- Be aware that a heavy load can reduce ground clearance and your ability to clear obstacles.
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It’s up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

Check Out Your Vehicle
Before you leave the pavement, be sure to do all scheduled maintenance and service, and inspect your vehicle for any problems. Pay special attention to the condition of the tires, and check the tire pressures.

After you return to the pavement, carefully inspect your vehicle to make sure there is no damage that could make driving it unsafe. Recheck the condition of the tires and the tire pressures.

Remember
The route presents limits (too steep or bumpy roads). You have limits (driving skill and comfort). And your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power).

Driving off-highway can be hazardous if you fail to recognize limits and take the proper precautions.

Accelerating and Braking
For better traction on all surfaces, accelerate slowly and gradually build up speed. If you try to start too fast on wet soil, mud, snow, or ice, you might not have enough traction to get underway, and you may dig yourself a hole. Starting with the shift lever in second (2) gear will help you have a smoother start on snow or ice.

Keep in mind that you will usually need more time and distance to brake to a stop on unpaved surfaces. Avoid hard braking. Do not “pump” the brakes; let the anti-lock braking system pump them for you.

Avoiding Obstacles
Debris in the road can damage your suspension or other components. Because your vehicle has a high center of gravity, driving over a large obstacle, or allowing a wheel to drop into a deep hole can cause your vehicle to tip or roll over.

Driving on Slopes
If you can’t clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk the slope before you drive on it. If you have any doubt whether or not you can safely drive on the slope, don’t do it. Find another route.

If you are driving up a hill and find that you cannot continue, do not try to turn around. Your vehicle could roll over. Slowly back down the hill, following the same route you took up the hill.
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

Crossing a Stream
Before driving through water, stop, get out if necessary, and make sure that:
• The water is not deep enough to cover your wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe. You could stall and not be able to restart your engine. The water can also damage important vehicle components.
• The banks are sloped so you can drive out.
• The water is not flowing too fast. Deep rushing water can sweep you downstream. Even very shallow rushing water can wash the ground from under your tires and cause you to lose traction and possibly roll over.
• The banks and surface under the water provide good traction. The water may hide hazards such as rocks, holes, or mud.

If you decide it is safe to drive through water, choose a suitable speed and engage the VTM-4 Lock. Proceed without shifting or changing speeds, and do not stop the vehicle or shut off the engine.

After driving through water, test your brakes. If they got wet, gently “pump” them while driving slowly until they operate normally.

If the water is deeper than the wheel hubs, some additional service may be required. This service is not covered by your warranties.

If You Get Stuck
If you get stuck, engage the VTM-4 Lock (see page 204). Carefully try to go in the direction (forward or reverse) that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tires at high speeds. It will not help you get out and may cause damage to the transmission or VTM-4 system.

If you are still unable to free yourself, your vehicle is equipped with front and rear tow hooks designed for this purpose.

Use a nylon strap to attach your vehicle to the recovery vehicle, and carefully take out the slack in the strap. Once the strap is tight, the recovery vehicle should apply force. Remember that the recovery vehicle needs good traction to avoid becoming stuck, too.
You should never use a jack to try to get unstuck. Your vehicle could easily slip off the jack and hurt you or someone else.

**Towing a Trailer Off-Road**

You may be able to safely tow a lightweight trailer (such as a motorcycle or small tent trailer) off-road if you follow these guidelines.

- Do not exceed 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or a tongue weight of 100 lbs (45 kg).
- Stay on smooth, level dirt roads, and avoid driving in hilly terrain.
- Allow extra room for starting, stopping, and turning.
- Slow down if you encounter bumps or other obstacles.
This section explains why it is important to keep your vehicle well maintained and how to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes instructions on how to read the maintenance messages in the information display, a maintenance record, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your vehicle, you may want to purchase the service manual. See page 305 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your dealer.

- Maintenance Safety: 228
- Maintenance Minder: 229
- Maintenance Record: 236
- Fluid Locations: 238
- Adding Engine Oil: 239
- Changing the Oil and Filter: 240
- Engine Coolant: 242
- Windshield Washers: 243
- Automatic Transmission Fluid: 244
- Differential Oil: 245
- Timing Belt: 245
- Brake Fluid: 246
- Power Steering Fluid: 247
- Lights: 248
- Floor Mats: 254
- Cleaning Seat Belts: 254
- Wiper Blades: 255
- Wheels: 257
- Tires: 257
- Checking the Battery: 262
- Vehicle Storage: 263
Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or qualified mechanic.

Important Safety Precautions
To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

**WARNING**

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a seriously crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection, maintenance recommendations, and schedules in this owner's manual.

Potential Vehicle Hazards
- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

**WARNING**

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.
Your vehicle displays engine oil life and maintenance service items on the information display to show you when you should have your dealer perform engine oil replacement and indicated maintenance service.

Based on the engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining engine oil life and displays it as a percentage.

To see the current engine oil life, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and push and release the Select/Reset knob repeatedly until the engine oil life display appears (see page 70).

The remaining engine oil life is displayed on the information display according to this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)</th>
<th>Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100% – 91%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90% – 81%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80% – 71%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70% – 61%</td>
<td>70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60% – 51%</td>
<td>60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50% – 41%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40% – 31%</td>
<td>40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30% – 21%</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20% – 16%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15% – 11%</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10% – 6%</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5% – 1%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The maintenance item code or codes indicate the main and sub items required at the time of the oil change (see page 235).

If the remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent, you will see the engine oil life indicator every time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. The maintenance minder indicator will also come on, and the maintenance item code(s) for other scheduled maintenance items needing service will be displayed next to the engine oil life indicator.

When the remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent, you will see a “SERVICE OIL LIFE” message along with the same maintenance item code(s), every time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
The maximum total mileage shown is “—9999.”

You can change the information display from the engine oil life display to the odometer, the trip meter, or the outside temperature (if equipped) every time you press and release the Select/Reset knob.

When the engine oil life is 0 percent or negative mileage, the maintenance minder indicator remains on even if you change the information display.

Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display.

When the remaining engine oil life is 0 percent, the engine oil life indicator will blink. The display comes on every time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. When you see this message, have the indicated maintenance performed by your dealer as soon as possible.

If you still do not perform the indicated maintenance, you will see a negative mileage. It is displayed when you drive over 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after seeing the 0 percent message. Afterward, it shows your driving distance if you continue to drive. Immediately have the indicated maintenance done by your dealer.
Maintenance Minder

Maintenance Main Items and Sub Items

When the vehicle needs maintenance, maintenance codes appear on the information display.

For an explanation of the maintenance codes, see page 235.

Resetting the Engine Oil Life Display

Your dealer will reset the display after completing the required maintenance service. You will see “OIL LIFE 100%” on the information display the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the maintenance minder as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Press the Select/Reset knob until the engine oil life indicator is displayed.

3. Press the Select/Reset knob for more than 10 seconds. The engine oil life and the maintenance item code(s) will blink.
If you have the required service done but do not reset the display, or reset the display without doing the service, the system will not show the proper maintenance intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when maintenance is needed.

Your authorized Honda dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service.

However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Make sure to have the service facility or person reset the display as previously described. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out the maintenance record. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend using Honda parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

CONTINUED
Maintenance Minder

U.S. Vehicles:
**Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the information display.

**Owner's Maintenance Checks**
You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the appropriate page listed.

- **Engine oil level** — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 189.
- **Engine coolant level** — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 190.
- **Automatic transmission** — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 244.
- **Brakes** — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 246.
- **Tires** — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 258.
- **Lights** — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, turn signals, brake lights, and license plate light monthly. See page 248.
### Maintenance Minder

#### Maintenance Main Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Maintenance Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Replace engine oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Replace engine oil and oil filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect front and rear brakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check parking brake adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect these items:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suspension components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driveshaft boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All fluid levels and condition of fluids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exhaust system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuel lines and connections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Maintenance Sub Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Maintenance Sub Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replace air cleaner element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replace dust and pollen filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replace timing belt and inspect water pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect valve clearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Replace spark plugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Replace transmission and transfer fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Replace VTM-4 rear differential fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Replace engine coolant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1: If the message “SERVICE” does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty on page 234.

NOTE: • Independent of the maintenance messages in the information display, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
• Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
• Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

1: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

2: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

3: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission and transfer fluid temperatures. This requires transmission and transfer fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission and transfer fluid changed every 30,000 miles (48,000 km).

4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher level of mechanical (shear) stress to fluid. This requires differential fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the differential fluid changed at 7,500 miles (12,000 km), then every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
You or the servicing dealer can record all completed maintenance here. When maintenance is performed, record the mileage, circle the coded item(s) completed, and write in any other non-coded items (such as brake fluid replacement) below the codes. Keep the receipts for all work done on your vehicle. Maintenance can also be recorded in your Honda service history booklet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mileage</th>
<th>Maintenance Performed</th>
<th>Signature Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mileage</th>
<th>Maintenance Performed</th>
<th>Signature Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mileage</th>
<th>Maintenance Performed</th>
<th>Signature Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Maintenance Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mileage</th>
<th>Maintenance Performed</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>A B 1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

237
Fluid Locations
Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment. Install the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes, and recheck the oil level. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

**Recommended Engine Oil**

Oil is major contributor to your engine’s performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil displaying the API certification seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute’s latest requirements. It is highly recommended that you use Honda motor oil in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

Honda motor oil is the preferred 5W-20 lubricant for your vehicle. It is highly recommended that you use Honda motor oil in your vehicle for optimum engine protection. Make sure the API certification seal says “For Gasoline Engines.”

The oil viscosity or weight is provided on the container’s label. 5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your vehicle to improve cold weather starting and fuel economy.
Adding Engine Oil, Changing the Oil and Filter

**Synthetic Oil**
You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil: it displays the API certification seal, and it is the proper weight. You must follow the oil and filter change intervals shown on the information display.

**Engine Oil Additives**
Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

**Changing the Oil and Filter**
Always change the oil and filter according to the maintenance messages shown on the information display. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled mechanic.

1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.

2. Open the hood, and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.
Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it.

Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.

Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

- 24.5 US qt (23.2 L)

Engine oil fill cap:

- 6 ft-lb (8.3 N·m, 0.8 kgf·m)

- 29 lb-ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten the drain bolt to:

- 29 lb-ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

- 24.5 US qt (23.2 L)

Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container, and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.

3. Remove the oil filter, and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your dealer) is required.

Make sure the oil filter gasket is not stuck to the engine block. If it is, remove it before installing a new oil filter.

4. Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it.

5. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten the drain bolt to:

- 29 lb-ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

6. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

7. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator should go out within 5 seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

8. Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.

9. Turn off the engine and let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more oil.
If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to between the MIN and MAX lines. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Always use Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

**WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.
1. When the radiator and engine are cool, relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pressing down.

2. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.

3. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

   Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

4. Put the radiator cap back on and tighten it.

5. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

   Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle’s cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

Windshield Washers

Check the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.

On Canadian models: The low washer level indicator comes on when the level is low (see page 67). Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather. When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition them.

**NOTICE**

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle’s paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump. Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.
Automatic Transmission Fluid

Automatic Transmission

Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground.
   Start the engine let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds before going step 2, but don’t wait longer than 90 seconds.

2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.

3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

5. If the level is below the lower mark, remove the fill plug, then add the fluid into the fill hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks on the dipstick.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

If you are not sure how to add fluid or you do not have the proper equipment to reach the transmission fluid fill hole, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled technician.
Always use Honda ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid). If it's not available, you may use a DEXRON® III automatic transmission fluid as a temporary replacement. However, continued use can affect the shift quality. Have the transmission flushed and refilled with Honda ATF-Z1 by your dealer as soon as it is convenient.

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

**Automatic Transmission Fluid, Differential Oil, Transfer Assembly Fluid**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Differential Oil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>4WD models only</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check the fluid level with the differential at normal operating temperature and the vehicle sitting on level ground. Remove the differential fluid filler bolt and washer, and carefully feel inside the bolt hole with your finger. The fluid level should be up to the edge of the bolt hole. If it is not, slowly add VTM-4 Differential Fluid until it starts to run out of the hole.

**Put a new washer on the filler bolt, then reinstall the filler bolt and tighten it securely. Tightening torque:**

33 lbf-ft (45 N·m, 4.6 kgf·m)

The differential should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

**Transfer Assembly Fluid**

The transfer assembly should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is indicated by a maintenance message on the information display.

Always use Hypoid gear oil GL4 or GL5 with a viscosity of SAE 90 or 80W-90, and have your dealer replace the transfer assembly fluid.
### Timing Belt, Brake Fluid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Timing Belt</strong></th>
<th><strong>Brake Fluid</strong></th>
<th><strong>Always use Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The timing belt should be replaced according to the maintenance message shown on the information display. Replace the belt at 60,000 miles (100,000 km) if you regularly drive your vehicle in one or more of these conditions:  
  - In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).  
  - In very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C).  
  - Frequently tow a trailer. | Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir monthly. Replace the brake fluid according to the time recommendation in the maintenance minder schedule.  
Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.  
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage. |

---

| In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).  
In very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C).  
Frequently tow a trailer. |
Check the level on the side of the reservoir when the engine is cold. The fluid should be between the UPPER LEVEL and LOWER LEVEL. If not add power steering fluid to the UPPER LEVEL mark.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently, and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. You may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement, but have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Honda PSF as soon as possible.

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.

The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. You may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement, but have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Honda PSF as soon as possible.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently, and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.
**Lights**

**Headlight Aiming**
The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, readjustment may be required. Adjustment should be done by your dealer or other qualified mechanic.

**Replacing a Headlight Bulb**
Your vehicle has halogen headlight bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

**NOTICE**

*Halogen* headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by squeezing the connector to unlock the tab, then slide the connector off the bulb.
3. Remove the bulb by turning it approximately one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
4. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Push the electrical connector onto the new bulb.
6. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.
Replacing a Front Turn Signal Bulb

1. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
2. To remove the front turn signal bulb, push it in slightly and turn it counterclockwise.
3. Install the new bulb into the socket and reinstall it.
4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

Replacing a Parking Light/Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

1. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
2. To remove a bulb, pull it straight out of its socket.
3. Install the new bulb into the socket.
4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
Lights

Replacing a Side Turn Signal Bulb

1. If you are changing the bulb on the driver’s side, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, and turn off the engine. If you are changing the bulb on the passenger’s side, turn the steering wheel to the right.

2. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the three holding clips from the inner fender.

3. Pull the inner fender cover away from the fender.

4. Remove the socket from the turn signal assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Pull the burned out bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

6. Insert the socket back into the turn signal assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

8. Put the inner fender cover in place. Install the three holding clips. Lock each clip in place by pushing on the center.
Replacing a Front Fog Light Bulb

If equipped

1. Use a wrench to remove the mounting bolt from the underbody.
2. Pull the under cover away from the bumper.
3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
4. Remove the bulb by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
5. Insert the new bulb into the assembly and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
6. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
7. Reinstall the mounting bolt on the under cover.
Lights

Replacing Rear Bulbs

1. Open the tailgate.

2. Remove the two screws, then pull the rear light assembly straight back to remove it from the body.

3. Remove the socket of the burned out bulb by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise, and pull it straight out of its socket.

4. Install a new bulb into the socket, and reinstall the socket into the light assembly.

Replacing a Back-up Light Bulb

1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover. Remove the covers by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tipped screwdriver.

2. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
3. Pull the burned out bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

4. Insert the socket back into the light assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

6. Reinstall the back-up light cover.

---

### Replacing the High-mount Brake Light

1. Place a cloth on the middle edge of a part of the lens on the passenger's side. Remove a part of the lens by carefully prying on its edge with a small flip tipped screwdriver.

2. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw under the lens.

3. Pull the light assembly out of the tailgate.

4. Remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push a new bulb into the socket until it bottoms. Reinstall the assembly.
If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

The driver’s floor mat that came with your vehicle hooks over the floor mat anchors. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals.

If you remove a floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use non-Honda floor mats, make sure they fit properly and that they can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.
Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every 6 months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

1. Raise each wiper arm off the windshield, lifting the driver’s side first, then the passenger’s side.

**NOTICE**

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the hood and wiper arms.

2. Front only: Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pushing in the lock tab. Hold the lock tab in while you push the blade assembly toward the base of the arm.

CONTINUED
Wiper Blades

3. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.

4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

5. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder until the tabs lock.

6. Front only: Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.

7. Lower the wiper arm.
Wheels
Clean the wheels as you would the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

Aluminum alloy wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing. Cleaning the wheels with harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush can damage the clear-coat. To clean the wheels, use a mild detergent and a soft brush or sponge.

Tires
To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tires and what to do when they need to be replaced.

⚠️ WARNING
Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner’s manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Inflation Guidelines
Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

- Overinflated tires can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) will warn you when tire pressure is low. See page 205 for information on the TPMS.

CONTINUED
Tires

We recommend that you visually check your tires every day. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tire at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm²) per month. Remember to check the spare tire at the same time.

Check the air pressures when the tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tire pressures.

If you check air pressures when the tires are hot (driven for several miles (kilometers)), you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than the cold readings. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the recommended cold air pressure. The tire will be underinflated.

You should get your own tire pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

While tubeless tires have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tire starts losing pressure.

Recommended Tire Pressures
The following chart shows the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal driving conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire Size</th>
<th>Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P235/70R16 104S</td>
<td>32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm²)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The compact spare tire pressure is: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm²)

For convenience, the recommended tire sizes and cold tire pressures are on a label on the driver’s doorjamb.

For additional information about your tires, see page 289.
Tire Inspection
Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.

Your tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a band 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire.

A tire this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.

Tire Maintenance
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tire life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

**NOTICE**
Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle’s aluminum wheels. Use only Honda wheel weights for balancing.
Tires

**Tire Rotation**

To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tires according to the maintenance messages displayed on the information display. Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated. If you purchase directional tires, rotate only front-to-back.

**Replacing Tires and Wheels**

Replace your tires with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire’s side wall). Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the anti-lock brake and the vehicle stability assist systems to work inconsistently.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels. Replacement wheels are available at your dealer.

**WARNING**

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner’s manual.

**Wheel and Tire Specifications**

- **Wheels:** 16 x 6 1/2 JJ
- **Tires:** P235/70R16 104S

See page 290 for information about DOT Tire Quality Grading, and page 291 for tire size and labeling information.
**Winter Driving**

Tires marked “M + S” or “All Season” on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design suitable for most winter driving conditions.

For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

**Snow Tires**

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may be lower than your original tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

**Tire Chains**

Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, mount only SAE Class “S” cable-type traction devices, with rubber chain tensioners, on the front tires. Use traction devices only when required by driving conditions or local laws. Make sure they are the correct size for your tires. Metal link-type “chains” should not be used.

When installing cables, follow the manufacturer’s instructions, and mount them as tight as you can. Make sure they are not contacting the brake lines or suspension. Drive slowly with them installed. If you hear them coming into contact with the body or chassis, stop and investigate. Remove them as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

**NOTICE**

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle’s brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.
Checking the Battery

Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator’s colors.

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent further corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your dealer or a qualified technician.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash your hands after handling.**

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle’s electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (−) cable first, and reconnect it last.

**WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.
If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Change the engine oil and filter.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in Park.

- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and tailgate seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and tailgate seals.

- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

Vehicle Storage

Maintenance
This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

| Compact Spare Tire                      | 266 |
| Changing a Flat Tire                    | 267 |
| If the Engine Won't Start               | 271 |
| Jump Starting                           | 272 |
| If the Engine Overheats                 | 274 |
| Low Oil Pressure Indicator              | 276 |
| Charging System Indicator              | 276 |
| Malfunction Indicator Lamp              | 277 |
| Brake System Indicator                  | 278 |
| Emergency Towing                        | 279 |
| Fuses                                   | 279 |
| Fuse Locations                          | 283 |
Compact Spare Tire

Use the compact spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

Check the inflation pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:

60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tire.
- Do not use the compact spare tire if you are towing a trailer.
- Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.

Replace the tire when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tire, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.
If you have a flat tire while driving, stop in a safe place to change it. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an exit or an area to stop that is far away from the traffic lanes.

**WARNING**

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park. Apply the parking brake. If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tire.

3. The tools and jack are behind a cover in the cargo area on the driver’s side. Remove the cover by pushing the top of the cover.

4. Turn the jack’s end bracket counterclockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack and tools.

---

**CONTINUED**
Changing a Flat Tire

6. Put the wheel nut wrench on the hoist shaft. Turn the wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Keep turning the wheel nut wrench to create slack in the cable.

7. Remove the bracket from the spare tire.

8. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.

9. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

5. The spare tire is stored underneath the rear cargo area. Remove the plastic cover on the cargo area lining to access the shaft for the spare tire hoist.

The wheel nut wrench supplied with your vehicle is specially adapted to fit the hoist shaft. Do not use any other tool.
10. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.

11. Remove the wheel nuts and the flat tire. Temporarily place the flat tire on the ground with the outside surface of the wheel facing up.

12. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

13. Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.

14. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.

15. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

Tighten the wheel nuts to: 80 lbf-ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

16. Remove the center cap from the flat tire, and place the flat tire up under the hoist.

CONTINUED
Changing a Flat Tire

17. Insert the hoist bracket into the center hole of the flat tire.

18. Slowly turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise to take up the slack of the hoist cable. Make sure the bracket is seated in the center hole of the flat tire.

19. Turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise until the flat tire rests against the underbody of the vehicle and you hear the hoist click.

20. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack’s end bracket to lock it in place. Replace the cover. Store the tools.

**WARNING**

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

**NOTICE**

Always raise the spare tire hoist, even if you are not stowing a tire. If the hoist is left down, it will be damaged during driving and need to be replaced.
If the Engine Won’t Start

Diagnosing why the engine won’t start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine’s starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.

- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. The transmission must be in Park or neutral or the starter will not operate.

- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See Jump Starting on page 272.

- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See Emergency Towing on page 279.

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 262). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 272).

The Starter Operates Normally

In this case, the starter motor’s speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to Starting the Engine on page 199.

CONTINUED
If the Engine Won’t Start, Jump Starting

- Are you using a properly coded key? An improperly coded key will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 64).

- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the low fuel indicator may not be working.

- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 279).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified mechanic to find the problem. See Emergency Towing on page 279.

Jump Starting
Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

**WARNING**
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it.

1. To jump start your vehicle:
   Open the hood, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or frozen, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

   **NOTICE**
   If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

2. Turn off all electrical accessories: heater, A/C, climate control, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in Park, and set the parking brake.

3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (−) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the grounding strap as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.

6. Start the vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

7. Once your vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

Jump Starting
If the Engine Overheats

The pointer of your vehicle’s temperature gauge should stay in the midrange under most conditions. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.). If your vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood.

**WARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral or Park, and set the parking brake. Turn off all the accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.

2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.

3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running, and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.

4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.

5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see Emergency Towing on page 279).

6. If you don’t find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank (see page 190). Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to the engine.
If the Engine Overheats

7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

**WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.

9. Start the engine, and set the interior temperature to maximum. Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.

10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 279).

11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.
Low Oil Pressure Indicator, Charging System Indicator

**Low Oil Pressure Indicator**

This indicator should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible, and you should take immediate action.

**NOTICE**

*Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.*

1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the hood, and check the oil level (see page 189). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 239).
4. Start the engine and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 279).

**Charging System Indicator**

If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.
If your vehicle’s battery has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes are erased. It takes at least three days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again. To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks 5 times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for a state emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to State Emissions Testing for more information (see page 298).

If this indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine’s emission control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle’s performance, continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your vehicle, the indicator coming on could be due to a loose or missing fuel fill cap. You will also see a “CHECK FUEL CAP” message on the information display. Tighten the cap until it clicks at least once (see page 187). Tightening the cap will not turn the indicator off immediately; it takes at least three days of normal driving.

If the indicator remains on or the fuel cap was not loose or missing, have the vehicle checked by the dealer as soon as possible.

**NOTICE**

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle’s emissions controls and the engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle’s warranties.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem in the automatic transmission control system.

**Readiness Codes**

Your vehicle has certain “readiness codes” that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If your vehicle’s battery has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes are erased. It takes at least three days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again. To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks 5 times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for a state emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to State Emissions Testing for more information (see page 298).
Brake System Indicator

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system’s dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed, and repaired as soon as possible (see Emergency Towing on page 279).

If the ABS indicator and the VSA system indicator come on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 246).

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.
Emergency Towing
If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

The only way you can safely tow your vehicle is with flat-bed equipment. The operator will load your vehicle on the back of a truck. Any other method of towing will damage the drive system. When you contact the towing agency, inform them a flat-bed is required.

On 4WD models

**NOTICE**

Towing with only two tires on the ground will damage parts of the 4WD system. It should be transported on a flat-bed truck or trailer.

Fuses

The vehicle’s fuses are located in four fuse boxes. The interior fuse boxes are located under the dashboard on the driver’s and passenger’s side.

**DRIVER’S SIDE INTERIOR**
Fuses

Checking and Replacing Fuses

If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 283 and 284, or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuse or fuses control that device. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is the cause. Replace any blown fuses, and check if the device works.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.

2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.
3. Check each of the large fuses in the primary under-hood fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside. Remove the screws with a Phillips-head screwdriver.

4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse boxes by pulling out each fuse with the fuse puller.

   The fuse puller is in the primary under-hood fuse box.

5. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.
Fuses

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket or radio).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate anything wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

**NOTICE**

*Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.*

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

If the driver's power window fuse is removed, the AUTO function of the driver's window will be disabled. You should reset the AUTO feature, (see page 95).

*On EX and EX-L models*
If the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio, you will see “ENTER COdE” in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code (see page 139).

**Trailer Fuses**
If a trailer light is burned out, check if these fuses are blown when you replace the light bulbs:
- Primary under-hood fuse box fuses 5, 7, and 24
- Interior driver's side fuse box: 10
- Interior passenger’s side fuse box: 10

If those fuses are OK, but the trailer lights still do not work, there are two blown 7.5 amp fuses in the trailer hitch wiring. To access the 7.5 amp fuses:
1. Open the tailgate and remove the cargo floor lid.
2. Pull out the bottom of the tailgate rubber seal.
3. Remove rear trim panel by pulling up on the inside edge of the rear trim panel, and unhooking the four clips and tabs.
4. After replacing fuses, and reinstall the rear trim panel in the reverse order of removal.

282
Fuse Locations

PRIMARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Amps.</th>
<th>Circuits Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Spare Fuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Spare Fuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Right Headlight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>ACG S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Hazard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Stop, Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Left Headlight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>40 A</td>
<td>Power Window Motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>40 A</td>
<td>Power Seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Rear Defroster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>40 A</td>
<td>Back Up, ACC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECONDARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Amps.</th>
<th>Circuits Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>AC INVERTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>40 A</td>
<td>VSA F/S Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>VSA Motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>VTM-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>ACM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Rear Accessory Socket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Amps.</th>
<th>Circuits Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>ETCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>IG Coil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>LAF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>TPMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>(20 A)</td>
<td>(FR FOG)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Fuse Locations**

**INTERIOR FUSE BOX**

**Driver’s Side**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Amps</th>
<th>Circuits Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Fuel Pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>SRS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Heater Control, A/C Clutch Relay, Cooling Fan Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Power Mirror, ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Daytime Running Light*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>ECU (PCM), Cruise Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>OPDS, Rear Wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>ACC Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Back-up Lights, Instrument Lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Turn Signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>VTM-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Front Wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* : Canadian models

**Passenger’s Side**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Amps</th>
<th>Circuits Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Driver’s Power Window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Driver’s Power Seat Reclining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Heated Seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Driver’s Power Seat Sliding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Daytime Running Light*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Driver’s side Rear Power Window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Front Passenger’s Power Window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Front Accessory Socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Small Light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Interior Light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Power Door Lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Back Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Moonroof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Moonroof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Passenger’s Side Rear Power Window</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* : Canadian models
The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle and the locations of the identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle’s tires and emissions control systems.

Technical Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identification Numbers</th>
<th>286</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifications</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOT Tire Quality Grading</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Tire Quality Grading</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treadwear</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Labeling</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)-Required</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emissions Controls</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Clean Air Act</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crankcase Emissions Control System</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporative Emissions Control System</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust Emissions Controls</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGM-FI System</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition Timing Control System</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Way Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement Parts</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Way Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Emissions Testing</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing of Readiness Codes</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers in various places.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your dealer uses to register your vehicle for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver’s side. It is also on the certification label attached to the driver’s doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the certification label.
The engine number is stamped into the engine block. It is on the front.

The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.
## Specifications

### Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4WD</th>
<th>2WD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Length</strong></td>
<td>188.0 in (4,775 mm)</td>
<td>188.0 in (4,775 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Width</strong></td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>EX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>76.5 in (1,943 mm)</td>
<td>77.5 in (1,968 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>4WD</td>
<td>2WD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>EX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70.5 in (1,790 mm)</td>
<td>71.1 in (1,821 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>EX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70.1 in (1,780 mm)</td>
<td>71.3 in (1,811 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wheelbase</strong></td>
<td>106.3 in (2,700 mm)</td>
<td>106.3 in (2,700 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Track</strong></td>
<td>4WD</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66.3 in (1,685 mm)</td>
<td>66.5 in (1,690 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2WD</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66.5 in (1,690 mm)</td>
<td>66.7 in (1,694 mm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4WD</th>
<th>2WD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gross vehicle weight rating</strong></td>
<td>See the tire information label attached to the driver’s doorjamb.</td>
<td>See the tire information label attached to the driver’s doorjamb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gross combined weight</strong>&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>9,700 lbs (4,400 kg)</td>
<td>9,700 lbs (4,400 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gross combined weight</strong>&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>9,700 lbs (4,400 kg)</td>
<td>9,700 lbs (4,400 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Equipped with transmission fluid cooler and power steering fluid cooler.

<sup>2</sup> The GCWR must be reduced 2 percent for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

### Air Conditioning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4WD</th>
<th>2WD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Refrigerant type</strong></td>
<td>HFC-134a (R-134a)</td>
<td>HFC-134a (R-134a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charge quantity</strong></td>
<td>24.7 — 26.5 oz (700 — 750 g)</td>
<td>24.7 — 26.5 oz (700 — 750 g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lubricant type</strong></td>
<td>ND-OIL8</td>
<td>ND-OIL8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4WD</th>
<th>2WD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fuel tank</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 20.34 US gal (77.0 l)</td>
<td>Approx. 20.34 US gal (77.0 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Engine coolant</strong></td>
<td>Change&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Change&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.93 US gal (7.3 l)</td>
<td>1.93 US gal (7.3 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Engine oil</strong></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2.43 US gal (9.2 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.5 US qt (4.3 l)</td>
<td>4.5 US qt (4.3 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Without filter</td>
<td>4.2 US qt (4.0 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Including filter</td>
<td>4.2 US qt (4.0 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Automatic transmission fluid</strong></td>
<td>5.3 US qt (5.0 l)</td>
<td>5.3 US qt (5.0 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Change</td>
<td>8.3 US qt (7.9 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>8.9 US qt (8.4 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear differential fluid (4WD)</strong></td>
<td>8.9 US qt (8.4 l)</td>
<td>8.9 US qt (8.4 l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Windshield washer reservoir</strong></td>
<td>4.8 US qt (4.5 l)</td>
<td>4.8 US qt (4.5 l)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Equipped with transmission fluid cooler and power steering fluid cooler.

<sup>2</sup> The GCWR must be reduced 2 percent for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

### Battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Capacity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Battery</strong></td>
<td>12 V — 20 AH/5 HR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Specifications

### Lights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lights</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headlights</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front side marker lights</td>
<td>12 V — 5 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front position lights</td>
<td>12 V — 5 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front turn signal lights</td>
<td>12 V — 21 W (AMBER)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side turn signal lights</td>
<td>12 V — 3 CP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
<td>12 V — 55 W (H11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear side marker lights</td>
<td>12 V — 3 CP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear turn signal/hazard lights</td>
<td>12 V — 21 W/5 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop/Taillights</td>
<td>12 V — 21 W/5 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup lights</td>
<td>12 V — 21 CP (18 W)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License plate lights</td>
<td>12 V — 3 CP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-mount brake light</td>
<td>12 V — 21 CP (18 W)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front map lights</td>
<td>12 V — 8 W **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear map lights</td>
<td>12 V — 4 CP **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area light</td>
<td>12 V — 5 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirror light</td>
<td>12 V — 1.1 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door ( Courtesy) light</td>
<td>12 V — 3.8 W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Engine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC, i-VTEC V6 gasoline engine (2WD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displacement</td>
<td>211.8 cu-in (3,471 cm²)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression ratio</td>
<td>10.0 : 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spark plugs</td>
<td>NGK: IZFR5K-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DENSO: SKJ16DR-M11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Alignment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alignment</th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Rear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Toe-in</td>
<td>0.00 in (0.0 mm)</td>
<td>0.00 in (0.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camber</td>
<td>Front: 0°66’ (2WD)</td>
<td>Rear: 0°50’ (4WD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear: 0°76’ (2WD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caster</td>
<td>Front: 1°98’ (2WD)</td>
<td>1°88’ (4WD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear: 1°88’ (4WD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tires

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tires</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front/Rear</td>
<td>Front/Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P235/70R16 104S</td>
<td>32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm²)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spare</td>
<td>1T155/90D16 110M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm²)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuses</th>
<th>Interiors</th>
<th>Passenger’s side</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driver’s side</td>
<td>See page 284 or the fuse label attached to the dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger’s side</td>
<td>See page 284 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door under the dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Under-hood</td>
<td>See page 283 or the fuse box cover.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 : EX-L model
*2 : LX and EX models

---

#### Technical Information

---

---
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

**Uniform Tire Quality Grading**

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and the maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200**
**Traction AA**
**Temperature A**

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

**Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

**Traction — AA, A, B, C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.
Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

**Tire Size**
Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P235/70R16 104S

**Temperature** — A, B, C
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**P** — Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

235 — Tire width in millimeters.

70 — Aspect ratio (the tire’s section height as a percentage of its width).

R — Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

16 — Rim diameter in inches.

104 — Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

**S** — Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).
Tire Labeling

Tire Identification Number
The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the following example TIN. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

DOT B97R FW6X 2202

DOT — This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R — Manufacturer’s identification mark.

FW6X — Tire type code.

2202 — Date of manufacture.

Max Load
The maximum load the tire can carry at maximum air pressure.

Maximum Tire Pressure
Max Press — The maximum air pressure the tire can hold.

Maximum Tire Load
Max Load — The maximum load the tire can carry at maximum air pressure.
Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) – Required Federal Explanation

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is provided by a separate telltale, which displays the symbol “TPMS” when illuminated.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
In Canada, Honda vehicles comply with the Canadian emission requirements, as specified in an agreement with Environment Canada, at the time they are manufactured.

Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

The Clean Air Act
The United States Clean Air Act* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and how to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work. Scheduled maintenance is on page 234.

* In Canada, Honda vehicles comply with the Canadian emission requirements, as specified in an agreement with Environment Canada, at the time they are manufactured.

Crankcase Emissions Control System
Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

Evaporative Emissions Control System
As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery
The onboard refueling vapor recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

The burning of gasoline in your vehicle's engine produces several by-products. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx), and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical “smog.” Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.
Emissions Controls

Exhaust Emissions Controls
The exhaust emissions controls include four systems: PGM-FI, ignition timing control, exhaust gas recirculation, and three way catalytic converter. These four systems work together to control the engine’s combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that come out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

PGM-FI System
The PGM-FI system uses sequential multiport fuel injection. It has three subsystems: air intake, engine control, and fuel control. The powertrain control module (PCM) uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

Ignition Timing Control System
This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NOx produced.

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
The exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NOx produced when the fuel is burned.

Three Way Catalytic Converter
The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NOx in the engine’s exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO₂), nitrogen (N₂), and water vapor.

Replacement Parts
The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Honda replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your vehicle.

The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your vehicle. Read your warranty manual for more information.
The three way catalytic converter contains precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converter is referred to as a three-way catalyst, since it acts on HC, CO, and NOx. A replacement unit must be an original Honda part or its equivalent.

The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.

A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine’s performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle’s three way catalytic converter.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.
- Keep the engine well maintained.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, backfiring, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.
State Emissions Testing

Testing of Readiness Codes
If you take your vehicle for a state emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain “readiness codes” that must be set in the onboard diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle retested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for retesting by doing the following.

- Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
- Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95°F.
- Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
- Keep the vehicle in Park. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).
- Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D. Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
- Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95°F.
Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your dealer.
Customer Service Information

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The service manager or general manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact your Honda Customer Service Office.

U.S. Owners:
American Honda Motor Co.
Honda Customer Service
Mail Stop 500-2N-7D
1919 Torrance Boulevard
Torrance, California 90501-2746
Tel: (800) 999-1009

Canadian Owners:
CUSTOMER RELATIONS
RELATIONS AVEC LA CLIENTÈLE
Honda Canada Inc.
715 Milner Avenue
Toronto, ON
M1B 2K8

Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: Toll-free 1-877-939-0909
Toronto (416) 287-4776

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: (787) 620-7028

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (see page 286)
- Name and address of the dealer who services your vehicle
- Date of purchase
- Mileage on your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you
Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

**New Vehicle Limited Warranty** — covers your new vehicle, except for the battery, emissions control systems, and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

**Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty** — these two warranties cover your vehicle’s emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

**Original Equipment Battery Limited Warranty** — this warranty gives up to 100% credit toward a replacement battery.

**Seat Belt Limited Warranty** — a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

**Rust Perforation Limited Warranty** — all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

**Accessory Limited Warranty** — Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

**Replacement Parts Limited Warranty** — covers all genuine Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

**Replacement Battery Limited Warranty** — provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

**Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty** — provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2007 Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle’s original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

**Canadian Owners**

Please refer to the 2007 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY:1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.
Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals  
(U.S. only)  
The publications shown below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order in any of three ways:  
- Detach and mail the order form on the right half of this page  
- Call Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356 (credit card orders only)  
- Go online at www.helminc.com  
If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication Form Number</th>
<th>Form Description</th>
<th>Price Each*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>61S9V04</td>
<td>2006-2007 Honda Pilot Service Manual</td>
<td>$75.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61S9V04EL</td>
<td>2003-2007 Honda Pilot Electrical Troubleshooting Manual</td>
<td>$50.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61S9V30</td>
<td>2003 Model Series Honda Pilot Body Repair Manual</td>
<td>$44.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31S9V641</td>
<td>2007 Honda Pilot Owner’s Manual</td>
<td>$34.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31S9V800</td>
<td>2007 Honda Pilot Navigation System Owner’s Manual</td>
<td>$29.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31S9VM20</td>
<td>2007 Honda Pilot Honda Service History</td>
<td>$12.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31S9VQ41</td>
<td>2007 Honda Pilot Quick Start Guide</td>
<td>$12.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HON-R</td>
<td>Order Form for Previous Years- Indicate Year and Model Desired</td>
<td>FREE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.

Valid only for sales within the United States. Canadian owners should contact their authorized Honda dealer.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-782-4356  
(NOTE: For Credit Card Holder Orders Only)  
Monday-Friday 8:00 A.M. — 6:00 P.M. EST  
MINIMUM CREDIT CARD PURCHASE $10.00  

OR

By completing this form you can order the materials desired. You can pay by check or money order, or charge to your credit card. Mail to Helm Incorporated at the address shown on the back of the order form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication Number</th>
<th>VEHICLE MODEL</th>
<th>Qty</th>
<th>Price Each*</th>
<th>Total Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.

Orders are mailed within 10 days. Please allow adequate time for delivery.
This manual covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the journeyman mechanic, but is simple enough for most mechanically-inclined owners to understand.

**Electrical Troubleshooting Manual:**
This manual complements the service manual by providing in-depth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

**Body Repair Manual:**
This manual describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.
Index

A

Accessories and Modifications ... 191
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position) ......................... 81
Accessory Power Sockets ................. 101
AC Power Outlet ...................... 102
Additives, Engine Oil ................. 239
Advanced Airbag System .............. 30
Airbag (SRS) ................................. 11, 25
Airbag System Components ............. 25
Air Conditioning System .............. 106
Rear A/C Control ....................... 113
Air Pressure, Tires ....................... 258
Antifreeze .................................. 242
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) ................. 209
Indicator ................................. 63, 210
Operation ................................ 209
Anti-theft, Audio System ............... 139
Anti-theft Steering Column Lock . 81
Audio System ............................... 115
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners .... 23
Automatic Lighting Off Feature .... 76
Automatic Speed Control ......... 175
Automatic Transmission ............... 200
Capacity, Fluid ....................... 288
Checking Fluid Level ................. 244
Shifting .................................. 200
Shift Lever Position Indicator . 200
Shift Lever Positions ................. 201
Shift Lock Release ..................... 203

B

Battery
Charging System
   Indicator ......................... 62, 276
   Jump Starting ..................... 272
   Maintenance ....................... 262
   Specifications ...................... 289
Before Driving .......................... 185
Belts, Seat ............................... 10, 21
Beverage Holders ....................... 99
Booster Seats ......................... 54
Brakes
   Anti-lock System (ABS) ........ 209
   Break-in, New Linings .................. 186
   Bulb Replacement .................. 252
   Fluid .................................. 246
   Parking ................................ 97
   System Indicator ................. 63, 278
   Wear Indicators .................. 209
Braking System ..................... 208
Break-in, New Vehicle ............... 186
Brightness Control, Instruments .... 76
Brights, Headlights .................. 75
Bulb Replacement
   Back-up Lights ...................... 252
   Brake Lights ......................... 252, 253
   Front Parking Lights ............... 249
   Front Side Marker Lights ......... 249
   Headlights ......................... 248
   High-mount Brake Lights ......... 253
   Rear Bulbs ......................... 252
   Specifications ...................... 289
   Turn Signal Light .................. 249, 252
   Bulbs, Halogen ...................... 248

C

Capacities Chart ....................... 288
Carbon Monoxide Hazard ............ 57
Carrying Cargo ....................... 193
CAUTION, Explanation of .......... iii
CD Changer .............................. 131, 134
CD Player ............................... 130

CONTINUED
Index

Certification Label  ................. 286
Chains ................................. 261
Changing a Flat Tire  .......... 267
Change Oil
  How to ............................... 240
  When to .............................. 229
Charging System Indicator .... 62, 276
Checklist, Before Driving ..... 198
Childproof Door Locks ......... 83
Child Seats
  LATCH ............................... 47
  Tether Anchorages Points ...... 51
Climate Control System ....... 112
Clock, Setting the .............. 140
Code, Audio System ............. 139
CO in the Exhaust .............. 295
Cold Weather, Starting in ..... 199
Compact Spare Tire ............ 266
Console Compartment .......... 99
Consumer Information ........ 302
Controls, Instruments and ... 59
Coolant
  Adding ............................... 242
  Checking ........................... 190
  Proper Solution ................. 242
  Temperature Gauge ............ 71
Conversation Mirror .......... 100
Crankcase Emissions Control
  System .............................. 295
Cruise Control Operation ...... 175
Customer Service Information 302

D

DANGER, Explanation of .......... iii
Dashboard ............................ 4, 60
Daytime Running Lights ....... 76
Daytime Running Lights
  Indicator ........................... 67
Dead Battery ........................ 272
Defects, Reporting Safety ...... 304
Defogger, Rear Window ......... 77
Defrosting the Windows ...... 108, 110
Dimensions .......................... 288
Dimming the Headlights ...... 75
Dipstick
  Automatic Transmission .... 244
  Engine Oil ........................ 189
Directional Signals .............. 66, 75
Disc Brake Wear Indicators ... 209
Disposal of Used Oil .......... 241

Doors
  Locking and Unlocking .... 82
DOT Tire Quality Grading ...... 290
Driver and Passenger Safety ... 7
Driving ............................... 197
Economy .............................. 190
DVD Player .......................... 142
DVD Player Error Message ...... 171

Economy, Fuel ........................ 190
Emergencies on the Road ...... 265
  Battery, Jump Starting ....... 272
  Brake System Indicator .... 278
  Changing a Flat Tire .......... 267
  Charging System Indicator 276
  Checking the Fuses .......... 279
  Low Oil Pressure Indicator 276
  Malfunction Indicator Lamp 277
  Overheated Engine .......... 274
Emergency Brake ................. 97
Emergency Flashers ............. 77
Emergency Towing .............. 279
Emissions Controls ............ 285
Emissions Testing, State ..... 298
Index

Engine
  Coolant Temperature Gauge .... 71
  Malfunction Indicator
    Lamp .......................... 62, 277
  Oil Pressure Indicator .... 62, 276
  Oil, What Kind to Use ........ 239
  Overheating .................... 274
  Specifications ................. 289
  Speed Limiter ................ 202
  Starting ....................... 199
Evaporative Emissions Controls . 295
Exhaust Fumes ................... 57
Exhaust Gas Recirculation
  System ................................ 296
Expectant Mothers, Use of Seat
  Belts by ........................ 19

F
  Fan, Interior .................. 106
  Features ....................... 105
  Filling the Fuel Tank ......... 187
  Filters ........................ 240
  Flashers, Hazard Warning .... 77
  Flat Tire, Changing a ......... 267

G
  Gas Mileage, Improving ....... 190
  Gasoline ....................... 186
  Fuel Reserve Indicator ....... 67
  Gauge .......................... 70
  Octane Requirement .......... 186
  Tank, Filling the ............. 187
  Gas Station Procedures ....... 187

Gauges
  Automatic Transmission ....... 244
  Brake .......................... 246
  Power Steering ................ 247
  Windshield Washers .......... 243
  Four-way Flashers ............. 77
  Fuel ................................ 186
  Cap Message ........................ 72
  Fill Door and Cap ............. 187
  Gauge .......................... 70
  Octane Requirement .......... 186
  Reserve Indicator ............. 67
  Tank, Filling the ............. 187
  Fuses, Checking the .......... 279

H
  Halogen Headlight Bulbs ...... 248
  Hazard Warning Button ....... 77

INDEX

CONTINUED

III
Index

Lower Anchor ...................... 47
Lubricant Specifications Chart .... 288
Luggage ............................ 193

M

Maintenance ......................... 227
Owner's Maintenance
  Checks .............................. 234
  Record .............................. 236-237
Minder .............................. 229-235
Minder Indicator ..................... 69
Safety .................................. 228
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .... 62, 277
Manual Seat Adjustments ......... 88
Meters, Gauges ........................ 70
Modifications ....................... 192
Moonroof ............................ 96

N

Neutral Gear Position ............ 201
New Vehicle Break-in .......... 186
NOTICE, Explanation of ........... i
Numbers, Identification ........ 286

O

Octane Requirement, Gasoline 186
Odometer .............................. 70
Odometer, Trip ....................... 70
Off-Highway Driving ............. 222
Off-Road Precautions 222
Oil
  Change, How to ................. 240
  Change, When to .............. 229
  Checking Engine .............. 189
Pressure Indicator 62, 276
Selecting Proper Viscosity
  Chart ............................... 239
ON (Ignition Key Position) .... 81
Onboard Refueling Vapor
  Recovery .......................... 295
Outside Mirrors .................... 93
Overheating, Engine .......... 274
Owner's Maintenance Checks 234

P

Panel Brightness Control ....... 76
Park Gear Position .............. 201
Parking .............................. 207
Parking Brake ........................ 97
Parking Brake and Brake System
  Indicator ......................... 63, 278
Parking Lights ..................... 75
Parking Over Things that Burn .. 297
Playing the Radio ............... 117
Playing a Disc ..................... 130
Playing the Disc Changer ....... 131, 134
PGM-FI System .................... 296
Power Seat Adjustments ......... 87
Power Socket Locations ......... 98
Power Windows .................... 94
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts ..... 19
Protecting Adults and Teens .... 12
  Additional Safety Precautions 20
  Advice for Pregnant Women .. 19
  Protecting Children ............ 38
  Protecting Infants .............. 43
  Protecting Larger Children .... 53
  Protecting Small Children .... 44

CONTINUED
## Index

### R

- Radiator Overheating ........................................... 274
- Radio/CD Sound System ........................................ 115
- Readiness Codes ................................................. 298
- Rear A/C Unit ..................................................... 113
- Rear Audio Control Panel ...................................... 147
- Rear Entertainment System ..................................... 142
- Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement ................................ 252
- Rear View Camera and Monitor ................................. 180
- Rear View Mirror .................................................. 92
- Rear Window Defogger ............................................ 77
- Rear Window Wiper and Washer ................................. 74
- Reclining the Seat Backs ....................................... 87-91
- Reminder Lights ................................................... 61
- Remote Audio Controls .......................................... 138
- Remote Control (RES) ............................................ 169
- Remote Transmitter .............................................. 83
- Replacement Information
  - Engine Oil and Filter ......................................... 240
  - Floor Mats ....................................................... 254
  - Fuses .................................................................. 279
  - Light Bulbs ....................................................... 248
  - Minder .............................................................. 235
  - Timing Belt ....................................................... 245
  - Tires ................................................................. 259
- Wiper Blades ....................................................... 255
- Replacing Seat Belts After a Crash ............................. 23
- Reserve Tank, Engine Coolant ................................. 190
- Restraint, Child ..................................................... 38
- Reverse Gear Position ........................................... 201
- Rotation, Tire ....................................................... 260
- System Components .............................................. 25

### S

- Safety Belts ......................................................... 10
- Safety Defects, Reporting ...................................... 304
- Safety Features .................................................... 9
- Airbags ............................................................... 11
- Seat Belts ............................................................ 10
- Safety Labels, Location of ..................................... 58
- Safety Messages ................................................... iii
- Seat Belts ............................................................ 10
- Additional Information .......................................... 21
- Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners ................................. 23
- Cleaning .............................................................. 254
- Lap/Shoulder Belt ................................................ 22
- Maintenance ........................................................ 23
- Reminder Light and Beeper ..................................... 21, 62
- Use During Pregnancy ........................................... 19
- Wearing a Lap/Shoulder Belt ................................... 15
- Seat Heaters ......................................................... 86
- Seats ................................................................. 87
- Folding the Second Seat ....................................... 89
- Folding the Third Seat .......................................... 90
- Head Restraints ................................................... 91
- Reclining the Second Seat ..................................... 89
- Reclining the Third Seat ....................................... 90
- Third Seat Access .................................................. 90
- Seats, Adjusting the ............................................. 87-91
- Security System ................................................... 174
- Serial Number ..................................................... 286
- Service Intervals .................................................. 229
- Service Manual ................................................... 305
- Service Station Procedures ..................................... 187
- Setting the Clock ................................................. 140
- Shifting the Automatic Transmission ......................... 200
- Shift Lever Position Indicator ................................. 200
- Shift Lock Release ............................................... 203
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement ....................... 249
- Off Indicator ....................................................... 34, 63
- Side Airbags ....................................................... 11, 31

- Shifting the Automatic Transmission ......................... 200
- Shift Lever Position Indicator ................................. 200
- Shift Lock Release ............................................... 203
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement ....................... 249
- Off Indicator ....................................................... 34, 63

- Shift Lock Release ............................................... 203
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement ....................... 249
- Off Indicator ....................................................... 34, 63

- Shifting the Automatic Transmission ......................... 200
- Shift Lever Position Indicator ................................. 200
- Shift Lock Release ............................................... 203
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement ....................... 249
- Off Indicator ....................................................... 34, 63

- Shifting the Automatic Transmission ......................... 200
- Shift Lever Position Indicator ................................. 200
- Shift Lock Release ............................................... 203
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement ....................... 249
- Off Indicator ....................................................... 34, 63

- Shifting the Automatic Transmission ......................... 200
- Shift Lever Position Indicator ................................. 200
- Shift Lock Release ............................................... 203
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement ....................... 249
- Off Indicator ....................................................... 34, 63
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signaling Turns</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow Tires</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound System</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spare Tire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflating</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifications</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifications Charts</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Control</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS, Additional Information</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag Service</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the Side Airbag Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator Work</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the SRS Indicator Works</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Your Front Airbags</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Your Side Airbags Work</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS Components</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS Indicator</td>
<td>33, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START (Ignition Key Position)</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the Engine</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Cold Weather at High Altitude</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With a Dead Battery</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Emissions Testing</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steam Coming from Engine</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering Wheel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-theft Column Lock</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttons</td>
<td>138, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereo Sound System</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storing Your Vehicle</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunglasses Holder</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Visor</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplemental Restraint System</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servicing</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS Indicator</td>
<td>33, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Components</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic Oil</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taillights, Changing Bulbs in</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taking Care of the Unexpected</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Descriptions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOT Tire Quality Grading</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emissions Control Systems</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Emissions Testing</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Way Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Gauge</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature, Inside Sensor</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature, Outside</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensioners, Seat Belts</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing of Readiness Codes</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tether Anchorage Points</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theft Protection</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Way Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time, Setting the</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt the Steering Wheel</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing Belt</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Chains</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire, How to Change a Flat</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Descriptions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOT Tire Quality Grading</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emissions Control Systems</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Emissions Testing</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Way Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Gauge</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature, Inside Sensor</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Tires ................................................. 257
Air Pressure ..................................... 258
Checking Wear ................................. 259
Compact Spare ................................. 266
DOT Tire Quality Grading ............ 290
Inflation .......................................... 257
Inspection ............................. 259
Maintenance ............................. 259
Replacing ..................................... 260
Rotating ..................................... 260
Snow ............................................. 261
Specifications .............................. 289
Tools, Tire Changing ...................... 267
Towing
A Trailer .................................... 213
Emergency Wrecker .................... 279
Equipment and Accessories ....... 219
Traction Devices ......................... 261
Weight Limit ............................... 215
Trailer Driving Tips ................. 219
Transmission
Checking Fluid Level ................. 244
Fluid Selection .......................... 244
Identification Number ................ 286
Shifting the Automatic ......... 200
Treadwear ............................. 290
Trip Meter ................................. 70
Turn Signals ............................... 75

U

Unexpected, Taking Care
of the ........................................ 265
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ... 290
Unleaded Gasoline ..................... 186
Used Oil, How to Dispose of ...... 241

V

Vanity Mirror ............................... 101
Vehicle Capacity Load............... 194
Vehicle Dimensions............... 288
Vehicle Identification Number ..... 286
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)
System ...................................... 211
VSA Off Switch ......................... 212
Vehicle Storage ......................... 263
VIN ............................................ 286
Viscosity, Oil ............................. 239
VTM-4 Lock ............................... 204

W

WARNING, Explanation of .......... iii
Warning Labels, Location of ........ 58
Warranty Coverages ............... 303
Washer, Windshield
Checking the Fluid Level .......... 243
Level Indicator .......................... 67
Operation ............................... 74
Wheels
Adjusting the Steering .............. 78
Alignment and Balance ........... 259
Compact Spare ......................... 266
Nut Wrench ............................. 269
Windows
Operating the Power ............... 94
Rear, Defogger ........................... 77
Windshield
Defroster ................................. 108, 110
Washers ................................. 74
Wipers, Windshield
Changing Blades ..................... 255
Operation ............................... 74
Rear Window Wiper and
Washer ..................................... 74
Wireless Headphones .............. 172

VIII
Index

Worn Tires ........................................... 259
Wrecker, Emergency Towing ....... 279
# Service Information Summary

**Gasoline:**
Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 87 or higher.

**Fuel Tank Capacity:**
20.34 US gal (77.0 ℓ)

**Recommended Engine Oil:**
API Premium grade 5W-20 detergent oil (see page 239).

Oil change capacity (including filter):
4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

**Automatic Transmission Fluid:**
Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid) preferred, or a DEXRON® III ATF as a temporary replacement (see page 245).

**Power Steering Fluid:**
Honda Power Steering Fluid preferred, or another brand of power steering fluid as a temporary replacement. Do not use ATF (see page 247).

**Brake Fluid:**
Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page 246).

**Rear Differential Fluid:**
Honda VTM-4 Differential Fluid (see page 245).

**Tire Pressure (measured cold):**
Front/Rear:
32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm²)

Compact Spare Tire:
60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm²)